

# مراجعات المتفوقين

لثانوية العامة بمرحلتها

في مادة

*English*

*3rd Year Secondary*

برعاية **منتدى بوابة الثانوية العامة**  
معنا التعلم متعة

**تحتوي على:**

- \* أهم النقاط الموجودة في المادة
- \* مراجعة على جميع اجزاء المنهج
- \* أقوى التوقعات
- \* امتحانات شاملة

# المراجعة النهائية

في

# اللغة الإنجليزية

اعداد

الاستاذ/ ايمن ابراهيم

## 1- The Situations

<b>1-Agreeing with an opinion</b>	<b>Disagreeing with an opinion.</b>
I (completely) agree. I couldn't agree more. \ Yes, you are quite right.	I (completely) disagree I don't agree./ I don't think so.
<b>2-Expressing Interest</b>	<b>Expressing Surprise</b>
How interesting! \ Is that right?	Really? I didn't know that. / Good Heavens!
<b>3-Asking for information</b> السؤال عن معلومات	<b>Giving information</b> إعطاء معلومات
Excuse me, could I ask you some questions about..? Could you tell me ..? \What does ".." mean?	Yes, of course. / Yes, certainly. Yes, that's fine..
<b>4-Asking for opinion</b>	<b>Giving opinion</b>
What's your opinion about (modern novels)? What do you think I should do to ...?	I think that .. / In my opinion .. As far as I am concerned ..
<b>6-Asking for Advice</b>	<b>Giving Advice</b>
What do you think I should do to...? Can you give me some advice about..?	I think you should.. Why don't you..? / If I were you, I'd..
<b>7-Asking for Instructions</b>	<b>Giving Instructions</b>
How can I operate (this coffee machine)? Can you show me how to + المصدر?	First, switch it on, then press the red button FirstThen./Next.\ Finally
<b>8-Language to deduce information</b>	<b>Making deduction</b>
Why do you think (they built the Suez Canal)? How do you think (they built the Suez Canal)?	I think they must have +PP..... Well, they might have +PP.....
<b>9-Making Suggestion</b>	<b>Responding to Suggestions</b>
How (What) about +v+ing..? \Let's مصدر	That's a good idea.
<b>10-Asking for an explanation</b>	<b>Giving an explanation</b>
Can you explain why...?/ How on earth...? Could you tell me how/why...?	Let me explain. \ I'll explain that to you. I'll try and explain.
<b>11-Wishes</b> الأمنيات	<b>Regrets</b> الندم
⇒I wish + فاعل + could/ would + مصدر ⇒I wish I had+ p.p .....⇒My goal is to +	⇒I am sorry that .....⇒I am disappointed that ...⇒I regret + v + ing
<b>12- Offer help</b> عرض المساعدة	<b>Reply to offer</b> الرد على المساعدة
1. Can I help you? 2. Would you like me to مصدر ....? 3. Shall I مصدر ..... for you?	1-That is very kind of you. 2-Thanks very much. 3-No, thank you .I can manage.
<b>13- Likes</b> الحب	<b>Dislikes</b> الكراهية
⇒I am a big fan of -...⇒ I prefer/ love..... ⇒I am fond of .....	⇒I am not keen on ...⇒ I don't enjoy ..... ⇒I can't stand..... (لاأطيق)
<b>14-Asking for reasons</b>	<b>Giving reasons</b>
1-Can you tell me whyفاعل + فعل .....? 2-What is the reason for...? 3-What is the cause of...?	1-It is because..... 2- Firstly, because ..... 3- Mainly اساسا because .....

<b>15-Give warning</b>	<b>Respond to Warning</b>
1- Be careful or you will مصدر 2- Don't مصدر... 3- Watch out! ... = Beware ! ... احذر	1- It is OK . 2- Why not ? 3- Don't worry I will take care. Thank you.
<b>16-Interview Questions</b>	<b>Answers</b>
Do you have (a driving licence)? What have you been doing since.....? Could you tell me why you want to work for us? Why do you think you'd be good at the job?	Yes, I do. I have been working as ... As I have the right qualifications for this job. As I'll enjoy meeting customers
<b>17-Persuasion</b>	<b>Talking about the future</b>
1- Why don't you..? 2- I really think you should	1 – I think ...2 – I am sure.....3 – I hope ...
<b>18-Ability</b> القدرة	can - can't مصدر \ am, is, are + (not) able to
<b>Necessity</b> الضرورة	must مصدر = have (has)to = have got to مصدر
<b>Unnecessity</b> عدم الضرورة	don't (doesn't) have to / needn't مصدر
<b>Warning \ Prohibition</b> التحذير والتحريم	mustn't مصدر = be not allowed to مصدر
<b>Probability</b> الاحتمال	may مصدر \ might مصدر \ could مصدر
<b>Advice</b> النصيحة	should = had better مصدر = If I were you.I..
<b>Blaming</b> اللوم	should have + P.P. shouldn't have +pp
<b>Permission</b> إذن	You can مصدر = You are allowed to مصدر

## EXERCISES

- You apologize to a friend because you broke his camera.
  - ☛ I must apologize for breaking your camera
- You have a guest, and you offer him a welcome drink.
  - ☛ Help yourself to the coffee
- You don't know how to spell a word.
  - ☛ How could I spell this word?
- Somebody asks you to be so careful on the road.
  - ☛ Yes, you are right.
- You visit your friend. He asks you "How do you like your tea?"
  - ☛ With little sugar, please
- You want Hany to post a letter for you.
  - ☛ Could you post this letter for me, please?
- You order a little child not to play with matches.
  - ☛ Never play with matches.
- you meet someone who is unwell
  - ☛ How are you feeling now?
- You are angry when your friend has spilled water on your jacket.
  - ☛ Oh, No, it was new (you shouldn't have done this)
- You heard that your friend Rania is in hospital.
  - ☛ I'm sorry to hear that bad news.
- You offer to answer the phone for your father.
  - ☛ Shall I answer the phone for you?
- You arrange to meet a friend.
  - ☛ Let's meet at 5.
- Your friend invites you to spend the weekend with him but you can't.
  - ☛ I wish I could but I'm busy.
- You want to know something about remote sensing.
  - ☛ Could you tell me about something about remote sensing?
- Your cousin thinks that computers are useful, you agree.
  - ☛ I agree with you
- You ask a friend to help you carry a heavy bag.
  - ☛ Could you help me carry this heavy bag?
- You can't hear what the teacher is saying.
  - ☛ Could you speak little louder, please?
- Somebody wants to speak to your father, but your father isn't at home.
  - ☛ I'm sorry, he is not in now
- You ask your cousin, Ashraf, to have some tea at home.

- ☛ May I invite you to have some tea with me at home?
20. **A friend of yours invites you to his party, you refuse politely.**  
☛ I wish I could but I'm busy
21. **Your visit your uncle who is in hospital.** ☛ I wish you speed recovery
22. **You accept your friend's apology for losing your book.** ☛ Never mind.
23. **You warn your sister not to play with matches.** ☛ Mind you don't play with matches.
24. **Your uncle advises you to obey your father. You accept.** ☛ Yes, you are right
25. **An old man can't cross the street. You offer to help him.**  
☛ Can I help you cross the street?
26. **Your brother wastes his time watching television**  
☛ You mustn't waste your time watching television.
27. **You ask a friend about the time.** ☛ What is the time now?
28. **You meet some tourists at the airport. You welcome them.** ☛ Welcome to Egypt.
29. **Samir thanked you for helping him to carry a heavy bag.** ☛ Don't mention it
30. **You want to ask a policeman the way to the bank.**  
☛ Could you tell me the way to the bank, please?
31. **You apologize to your teacher for arriving late.** ☛ I'm sorry for being late.
32. **You advise your friend who is very ill.** ☛ You should see a doctor.
33. **You want to book a room for 2 nights.** ☛ Could I book a room for 2 nights?
34. **You want to know when the next train to Cairo leaves.**  
☛ Could you tell me when the next train to Cairo leaves?
35. **You friend, Samir, is going to travel abroad.**  
☛ Good bye and don't forget to keep in touch.
36. **You aren't angry when your friend lost your pen.** ☛ Never mind
37. **You offer to clean your father's office.** ☛ May I clean your office?
38. **You ask your sister's opinion about a book. She has just read.**  
☛ What do you think of this book?
39. **Someone thinks that TV. is a waste of time . You disagree.** ☛ I disagree with you
40. **You meet an old friend who you haven't seen for a long time.**  
☛ How are you? I really miss you
41. **You suggest a solution to the problem of pollution in Cairo.**  
☛ We should use fewer private cars
42. **you ask someone to wait on the phone** ☛ Hold on, please
43. **you want the teacher to repeat what he has said** ☛ Could you repeat it again, please?
44. **a salesman wants too much money for something**  
☛ That's too much can't you make it less.
45. **You want your brother to join the university.**  
☛ It would be better if you join the university.
46. **Your brother is taking an exam next week.**  
☛ You must work hard and revise your lessons well.
47. **Your friend came out of hospital.** ☛ I am pleased because you are all right now.
48. **Your sister saw a terrible dream.** ☛ Do not be afraid.
49. **Your brother s tooth is hurting.** ☛ You must go to the dentist's.
50. **Your pen friend is at the airport traveling to his country.**  
☛ Your visit was a great honour
51. **You bought a gold ring, but you discovered it was an imitation.**  
☛ I have been deceived.
52. **Some visitors have come to visit you at home.** ☛ You are welcome.
53. **You ask your friend about the price of his new camera.**  
☛ How much is your camera?

54. You warn your friend that he may fall off the ladder.  
☛ Be careful or you will fall off the ladder.
55. You see a little girl who is eating too much sweet. ☛ Mind you don't eat too much sweet
56. The student next to you keeps talking during the lesson. ☛ Keep quiet, please.
57. Your friend is driving his father's although he does not have a licence  
☛ It is wrong to drive a car without having a licence.
58. Your friend Samy wants you to advise him about the best way to study Maths.  
☛ You should do a lot of mathematical problems.
59. Your friend Hatem bought a new camera and does not know how to operate it.  
☛ You should read the instructions book.
60. Your friend Hazem is in hospital. You are speaking to his doctor.  
☛ How is he now, doctor?
61. Your brother wants to buy a present for his friend and asks your opinion.  
☛ If I were you I would buy him a dictionary.
62. A friend of you wants to borrow some money from you, but you apologise.  
☛ I am sorry. I have not got money at this moment.
63. You want to know when your plane to London takes off.  
☛ Could you tell me when my plane to London takes off?
64. You are getting out of bed quickly because your alarm clock says 9 O'clock.  
☛ I must hurry, it's 9 O'clock.
65. It is raining heavily and everyone else in the street has an umbrella.  
☛ I wish I had an umbrella.
66. You politely interrupt **تقاطع** someone to say something.  
☛ Excuse me, Could I just say something?
67. You regret not catching the bus because you didn't run quickly.  
☛ I wish I had caught the bus.
68. Your friend asks you how your lunch was. ☛ It was delicious.
69. You visit your friend then you want to leave. ☛ I must be getting home now.
70. your guest says " I must leave now " ☛ It's been very good to see you.
71. You saw some clouds in the sky. ☛ It may rain today.
72. You visit a friend on his birthday. ☛ Happy birthday to you.
73. You meet your friend on the first day of the year. ☛ Happy New Year
74. Your brother is watching TV, it's late at night. ☛ It's time to go to bed.
75. You see an accident on the road ..... ☛ Oh, that is terrible!
76. You are riding your friend's car .he is driving too fast. ☛ You must slow down
77. Your friend says "do you mind if I use your pen" you agree. ☛ No. not at all.
78. Your friend is sorry that you got low marks..... ☛ Well. Never mind.
79. your friend's uncle has an accident, you show sympathy  
☛ I'm so sorry to hear your bad news
80. you offer your friend some flowers ☛ These flowers are for you.
81. You want to express your opinion about the educational programmes.  
☛ They are very useful.
82. You blame your friend for coming late. ☛ You shouldn't have come late.
83. You are annoyed when you see a boy who is going to swim in a canal.  
☛ You shouldn't do this , it's dangerous.
84. Your neighbours are making a lot of noise you express your annoyance.  
☛ You must stop this right now.
85. Your friend wants to borrow your camera. You refuse politely.  
☛ I'm sorry, I need it my self.
86. You introduce your friend, Ramy, to your brother. ☛ This is my friend Ramy.

87. You are introduced to someone.      ☛ Nice to meet you.
88. Someone has parked his car in a "No Parking" area.  
☛ It's forbidden to park your car here.
89. You ask your father's permission to go to the cinema.      ☛ Could I go to the cinema?
90. You refuse your friend's offer to help you with your homework      ☛ No, thanks
91. You object to your friend's idea to go swimming.      ☛ That's not a good idea.
92. Your friend asks you what you used to do when you were a child.      ☛ I used to fly a kite.
93. You ask your father about what he used to do when he was young.  
☛ What did you use to do when you were young, dad?
94. A friend asks you where and when you were born.  
☛ I was born in Tanta on 7th May, 1975.
95. Your friend asks you what you predict about education in Egypt.  
☛ I think students will learn at home from computers and the internet.
96. You are guessing why a bad car accident happened in your street.  
☛ Perhaps the driver was driving at a very high speed.
97. Your sister asks you what'd happen if you had suddenly found a million pounds.  
☛ I'd buy a plane.
98. Your friend is fond of fizzy drinks.      ☛ You must mind your health.
99. Your little brother wants to know what a referee does  
☛ A referee controls and organizes the match.
- 100-A friend asks you why we sometimes have stress.      ☛ Because of daily life problems.

## Situations without answers

### Respond to each of the following situations

- 1-You ask your friend if he took part in the 25th January revolution.
- 2-Your friend tells you that about 400 people have lost their lives since the revolution started.
- 3-You ask your friend if he-she has any sympathy towards the late president.
- 4- You are invited to the coronation of the new president ,you like the idea.
- 5- You thank a friend who did a favor for you.
- 6- You give your opinion of Egypt's TV coverage of the events during the days of the revolution.
- 7- You are visiting the book fair, you want to know the price of a book you liked.
- 8-You apologize to your friend who invites you to his wedding.
- 9-It's very hot outside but your friend insists on going for a walk.
- 10- You receive a smart mobile as a present from your uncle.
- 11- Your friend thinks that Egypt's league matches can start without supporters.
- 12-Your friend congratulates you on the revolution's success.
- 13-Your friend tells you that Aljazeera channel used to tell lies.
- 14-You see some police soldiers hit the demonstrators with sticks.
- 15 – Your father asks you what's on TV after the news.
- 16-You ask your friend what is his opinion of the youth who carried out the revolution.
- 17- You think that Wael Ghoneem is a model for many Egyptians.
- 18-It's raining heavily while you are on your home with a friend , suggest something.
- 19-You express your disgust with the way some people talk about the late president.
- 20- Your friend asks you what makes a good president.
- 21-A friend asks if you would like to be the minister of education in the next elected government.
- 22- You forgot to thank a friend for a present he/she gave you.
- 23- Someone asks if you think people will still have cars in 50 years .
- 24- You hear the word 'magnet' on the radio. Ask a friend what it means.
- 25-A friend asks you why you have such an expensive mobile phone. You have two reasons.
- 26-Your friend starts to cross a road when you see a car coming. Warn your friend .
- 27>Your brother is using the knife carelessly. You warn him.
- 28.You see an old woman crossing the street. A fast bus is coming. You warn her.

29. Your mother warns you of playing with fireworks.  
30. An old man is about to fall in a deep hole in the street. You warn him.

## ***Workbook Practical Tests***

### **PT:(1)**

1. Someone says they think magazines are a waste of money. Disagree, giving a reason.
2. A friend from England calls and asks about the weather. You see dark clouds in the sky.
3. One of your friends watched a football match on TV and found it boring. You have a different opinion.
4. You hear someone use a word you do not understand. The word is energy.

### **(2)**

1. A foreign friend wants to know how to make tea the Egyptian way. Tell him/her what to do first.
2. Someone asks what you were doing at eight o'clock this morning.
3. A friend asks you what you think about TV news programmes.
4. A friend wants a job to help poor people. Advise him or her.

### **(3)**

1. You do not understand why it goes dark at night. Ask someone to explain it.
2. A friend suggests that swimming is a good way to keep fit. State another way.
3. A friend suggests that you join a squash club together. Suggest something else.
4. Someone asks where your friend Ali is. You have not seen him for a long time. You are almost certain he is on holiday.

### **(4)**

1. Your brother looks worried. You want to know whether he has a problem.
2. Your mother was very busy yesterday. You regret not helping her.

3. An English friend asks you how you celebrate Sham El-Nessim.
4. You forgot to thank a friend for a present he/she gave you.

### **(5)**

1. Your friend starts to cross a road when you see a car coming. Warn your friend.
2. Someone asks if you think people will ~till have cars in 50 years.
3. You hear the word *magnet* on the radio. Ask a friend what it means.
4. A friend asks you why you have such an expensive mobile phone. You have two reasons.

### **(6)**

1. You are interviewing someone for a job. Find out about their qualifications and experience.
2. Your friend looks like he/she hasn't been sleeping for days. Advise him/her.
3. An interviewer has asked you why you have applied for a job in a particular company. Give reason.
4. You do not understand what *distance learning* is. Ask a friend.

### **Sudan 2011**

- 1- You ask your friend doctor's advice how to keep fit.
- 2- A pen friend asks you about the places of interest in Egypt
- 3- Your brother got a good job at a big company
- 4- You suggest going to the theatre at the weekend,



## 2- A) The places and the Speakers

Place		Speaker A		Speaker B	
airport	مطار	passport official	موظف جوازات	traveller	مسافر
bakery	مخبز	baker	خباز	customer	زبون
bank	بنك	bank clerk	موظف بنك	businessman	رجل أعمال
animal clinic	عيادة بيطرية	animal doctor	طبيب بيطرى	animal owner	صاحب الحيوان
barber's	صالون حلاقة	barber	حلاق	customer	زبون
bookshop	مكتبة	salesman	بائع	customer	زبون
bus	أتوبيس	conductor	محصل	passenger	راكب
butcher's	محل جزارة	butcher	جزار	customer	زبون
café	مقهى	waiter	جرسون	customer	زبون
carpentry	ورشة نجارة	carpenter	نجار	house owner	صاحب منزل
check in desk	مكتب فحص الأوراق	check-in clerk	موظف الفحص	passenger	راكب
chemist's	صيدلية	chemist	صيدي	customer	زبون
cinema	سينما	usher	مرشد سينما	audience	متفرج
clinic	عيادة	patient	مريض	nurse	ممرضة
clothes shop	محل ملابس	salesperson	بائع	customer	زبون
club	نادي	coach	مدرب	trainee	متدرب
college	كلية	professor	أستاذ جامعي	student	طالب
company	شركة	manager	مدير	candidate	مرشح لوظيفة
computer centre	مركز كمبيوتر	programmer	مبرمج	customer	زبون
court	محكمة	witness	شاهد	judge	قاضي
customs	الجمرك	customs official	موظف الجمرك	passenger	راكب
dentist's	عيادة الأسنان	dentist	طبيب أسنان	patient	مريض
dry-cleaner's	مغسلة	dry-cleaner	منظف	customer	زبون
electrician's	محل كهربائي	electrician	كهربائي	customer	زبون
electronics'	محل الكترونيات	technician	فني	customer	زبون
embassy	سفارة	official	موظف	applicant	متقدم بطلب
exchange office	مكتب صرافة	employee	موظف	customer	زبون
flower shop	محل زهور	florist	بائع زهور	customer	زبون
fruitseller's	محل فكهاني	fruitseller	فكهاني	customer	زبون
garage	جراج	car owner	مالك سيارة	garage man	رجل الجراج
greengrocer's	بائع الخضار	greengrocer	الخضري	customer	زبون
grocer's	محل البقال	grocer	البقال	buyer	مشتري
hairdresser's	صالون كوافير	hairdresser	مصفف الشعر	customer	زبون
home	البيت	husband	الزوج	wife	الزوجة
hospital	مستشفى	patient	مريض	visitor	زائر
hotel	فندق	receptionist	موظف استقبال	resident	نزيل / مقيم
jeweller's	محل جواهرجي	jeweller	جواهرجي	customer	زبون
laboratory	معمل	professor	أستاذ جامعة	researcher	باحث
library	مكتبة	librarian	أمين مكتبة	student	طالب
mechanic's	ورشة ميكانيكي	mechanic	ميكانيكي	driver	سائق
museum	متحف	guide	مرشد	tourist	سائح
nursery	حضانة	baby sitter	مربية	parents	والدين
oculist's	عيادة عيون	oculist	طبيب العيون	patient	مريض

office	مكتب	secretary	سكرتيرة	client	عميل
company	شركة	interviewer	محاوّر	interviewee	متحاوّر
optician's	محل نظارات	optician	ألنظاراتي	patient	مريض
passport department	مصلحة الجوازات	official	موظف	citizen	مواطن
petrol station	محطة بنزين	worker	مساعد	a car owner	مالك سيارة
photo shop	محل تصوير	photographer	مصور	customer	زبون
plane	طائرة	air hostess	مضيفة جوية	passenger	راكب
playground	ملعب	referee	حكم	player	لاعب
plumber's	مكان السباك	plumber	سباك	landlord	مالك منزل
police station	مركز	officer	ضابط	reporter	مبلغ
post office	مكتب بريد	post official	موظف بالبريد	citizen	مواطن
radio studio	أستوديو إذاعي	interviewer	مذيع	scientist	عالم
railway station	محطة سكة حديد	booking clerk	موظف الحجز	passenger	راكب
restaurant	مطعم	waiter	جرسون	customer	زبون
service center	مركز صيانة	technician	فني	customer	زبون
shoe shop	محل أحذية	seller	بائع	customer	زبون
shoemaker's	محل صانع أحذية	shoemaker	صانع أحذية	customer	زبون
stationery shop	مكتبه أدوات مكتبية	Sales person	بائع	customer	زبون
taxi	سيارة أجرة	taxi driver	سائق تاكسي	passenger	راكب
street	شارع	foreigner	أجنبي	passer-by	عابر
tailor's	مكان خياط	tailor	ترزي	customer	زبون
TV studio	استوديو تليفزيون	interviewer	مذيع	interviewee	متحاوّر معه
theatre	مسرح	usher	مرشد مسرح	audience	مشاهد
tourist site	موقع سياحي	guide	مرشد	tourist	سائح
travel agency	وكالة سفر	travel agent	وكيل السفر	tourist	سائح
watchmaker's	محل الساعاتي	watchmaker	ساعاتي	customer	زبون
zoo	حديقة حيوان	keeper	حارس	visitor	زائر

## 2- B) The Functions

Introducing people	تقديم الناس	Persuading	الإقناع
Introducing yourself	تقديم نفسك	admiration	التعبير عن الاعجاب
Greetings	التحيات	Expressing worry	التعبير عن القلق
Seeing someone off	توديع شخص	Reminding	التذكير
Making a request	عمل طلب	Stating possibility	التعبير عن الاحتمالية
Making an invitation	عمل دعوة	Deducing	الاستنتاج
Making a suggestion	عمل اقتراح	Predicting	التنبؤ
Warning	التحذير	Reassuring	التأكيد
Offering help	عرض المساعدة	Forgiving	التسامح / العفو
Asking for an opinion	طلب رأي	Well – wishing	الامنية الجيدة
Giving opinion	ابدا ء / اعطاء رأي	Showing no care	بيان عدم الاهتمام
Agreeing with an opinion	الموافقة علي رأي	Ensuring	التأكيد
Wishes	الامنية	Giving direction	اعطاء اتجاهات
Congratulation	التهنئة	Giving a reason	اعطاء سبب أو مبرر
Giving Advice	اعطاء نصيحة	Greeting warmly	التحية بدفء
Accepting advice	قبول النصيحة	Ask and answer questions	سؤال و اجابة اسئلة
Refusing advice	رفض النصيحة	Request / offer help	طلب او عرض مساعدة

Blaming someone	اللوم علي شخص	Giving instructions	اعطاء تعليمات
Permission	الاذن	Stating preference	التعبير عن ما نفضل
Asking about the way	السؤال عن الطريق	Contrasting ideas	افكار متناقضة
Regret	الندم	Demanding explanations	طلب ايضاح
Asking for instructions	طلب تعليمات	Rejecting something	رفض شئ
Certainty	التأكد	Justifying your opinion	تبرير الرأي
Uncertainty	عدم التأكد	Guessing	التخمين
Making recommendations	عمل توصية / تذكية	Asking for information	طلب معلومات
Asking for information	طلب معلومات	Making complaints	عمل شكوة
Thanking	الشكر	Approval	استحسان
Inquiring	الاستفسار	Late advise	النصيحة في الماضي
Expressing fear	التعبير عن الخوف	Concession	تنازل
Expressing surprise	التعبير عن الدهشة	Giving classification	اعطاء تصنيف
Expressing anger	التعبير عن الغضب	Showing responsibility	ابداء مسنولية
Expressing pleasure	التعبير عن السرور	Probability	الاحتمالية
Expressing sympathy	التعبير عن المواساة	Release from blame	الاعفاء من اللوم
Suspecting / doubt	الشك	Intention	النية
Prediction	التنبؤ	Anxiety	القلق
Encouragement	التشجيع	Giving Orders	اعطاء أوامر
Exclamation !	التعجب	Liking & disliking	الحب & الكراهية
Saying goodbye	الوداع	Presenting	تقديم شئ
Agreeing strongly	الموافقة بقوة	On the phone	علي التليفون

## Exercises

**Say where these mini-dialogues take place and who the speakers are :**

1 - A For homework, please do Exercises B and C on

B- Could you repeat, please?

A- Certainly. Exercises B and C on .page 64.

Place: ..... Speaker A :..... Speaker B :.....Function.....

2-A-What's the matter?

B- I can't sleep well and I have difficulty going up or down the stairs'.

A- Do you smoke?

B- Yes, I smoke about 20 cigarettes a day.

A- That's terrible. Let me examine your chest.

Place: ..... Speaker A :..... Speaker B :.....Function.....

3- A- May I have your attention, please? I hope you are enjoying the beautiful views of the?

B- What's that huge building?

A- It is the monastery of St Catherine.

B-When was it built?

A: It was built in the sixth century by Justinian, the Roman Emperor.

Place: ..... Speaker A :..... Speaker B :.....Function.....

4- A-May I see your ticket, please?

B- Here you are.

A-Seat 20A. The first row.

B- Thank you.. What time does the film start?

Place: ..... Speaker A :..... Speaker B :.....Function.....

5- A. How quickly can you get me to the airport?

B : It's a 40-minute drive using the 6th of October bridge.

A : Can't you get there faster ? I'm very late.

B : I know a shortcut that will get you there in 30 minutes and that will be for the same fare.

A: Thank you very much for your help. Let's go.

Place: ..... Speaker A :..... Speaker B :.....Function.....

6- A- Passport and ticket, please.

B- Here you are.

A- Smoking or non-smoking?

B- Non-smoking, please.

A-Thank you. I've given you a window seat, 20B. Here's your boarding card.

Place: ..... Speaker A :..... Speaker B :.....Function.....

7- A- What time is the next train to Assiut?

B- Nine thirty-five.

A-Which platform?

B- Platform twelve.

A- Thanks a lot.

Place: ..... Speaker A :..... Speaker B :.....Function.....

8- A- Have you finished the work on my car?

B- I'm afraid not. We haven't got the parts yet,

A-Oh, that's a nuisance. When do you think it'll be ready?

B- Well, we're getting the parts in the morning. You'll be able to collect the car tomorrow evening.

Place: ..... Speaker A :..... Speaker B :.....Function.....

9- A: How would you like to pay for it, sir? By credit or in cash?

B- In cash.

A- That's fine, sir. Shall I put it in a bag for you?

B- No, thank you. It's very cold outside, so I think I'll wear it now.

Place: ..... Speaker A :..... Speaker B :.....Function.....

10 - A- Get your books out and turn to page 28.

B- Excuse me, sir. Are we going to draw the map?

A- Don't draw the map, just write the answers.

Place: ..... Speaker A :..... Speaker B :.....Function.....

11- A - Welcome, dear. What would you like to drink, tea or coffee?

B- Tea, please.

A- What about a piece of this cake? I made it myself this afternoon.

B- It's delicious. Thank you.

Place: ..... Speaker A :..... Speaker B :.....Function.....

12- A- Excuse me, madam. May I have a look inside your handbag, please?

B-What for?

A- It's only security measures before boarding a plane.

B-Well. Go ahead.

Place: ..... Speaker A :..... Speaker B :.....Function.....

- 13- A- May I take your order, sir?  
B- Yes, I'll have the grilled fish, please.  
A- How would you like it?  
B- Well done, please.

Place: ..... Speaker A :..... Speaker B :.....Function.....

- 14- A-Excuse me. I'd like to send this letter by Express Mail, please.  
B-Where to?  
A- Paris.  
B- You have to pay L.E; 15. -  
A- No problem. Here is the money.

Place: ..... Speaker A :..... Speaker B :.....Function.....

- 15-A-Can I help you?  
B- Yes, I'd like to buy a pair of shoes.  
A- What colour would you like?  
B- Black, please.

Place: ..... Speaker A :..... Speaker B :.....Function.....

- 16- A- We are going to talk about Imhotep in our history lesson.  
B- Who was Imhotep?  
A- He was an ancient Egyptian who lived in about 2650 BC.  
B- Why was he a very important politician?  
A- He was king Zoser's prime minister.

Place: ..... Speaker A :..... Speaker B :.....Function.....

- 17- A- I'd like to exchange some foreign currency.  
B- Dollars or Francs.  
A- American dollars.  
B- How much do you have?  
A - 500 dollars.

Place: ..... Speaker A :..... Speaker B :.....Function.....

- 18- A- It's nice to see you. I wish you a speedy recovery.  
B- Thanks a lot. It's kind of you to visit me.  
A- When will you leave?  
B- In two days' time.

Place: ..... Speaker A :..... Speaker B :.....Function.....

- 19- A- Keep silent, please. You shouldn't make any noise here. The people here need concentration during reading.  
B- I'm awfully sorry, sir.

Place: ..... Speaker A :..... Speaker B :.....Function.....

- 20 - A-1 haven't been feeling very well lately.  
B- What have you been suffering from?  
A-When reading I don't feel at ease.  
B- Don't worry. You must have a new pair of glasses. Let me examine your eyes.

Place: ..... Speaker A :..... Speaker B :.....Function.....

- 21- A- Excuse me, madam. Have you got anything to declare?  
B - To declare?  
A -I mean do you have any electrical devices such as computers or radio sets?  
B- No, I haven't got any.

Place: ..... Speaker A :..... Speaker B :.....Function.....

- 22- A- I've come to report the theft of my car.  
B- How did this happen?  
A-I left it in a side street in Shubra Street. When I came back after about an hour, I didn't find it.

Place: ..... Speaker A :..... Speaker B :.....Function.....

- 23-A-Can I help you?  
B- Yes, please. I'd like to have a cup of tea.  
A- How do you like your tea?  
B- With little sugar, please.

Place: ..... Speaker A :..... Speaker B :.....Function.....

- 24- A- How often is there a flight to Rome?  
B- We have flights to Rome every day.  
A- Are they non-stop flights?  
B- Yes. Direct to Rome.

Place: ..... Speaker A :..... Speaker B :.....Function.....

- 25- A- May I take your order?  
B- Yes, I'd like to have black coffee.  
A- Certainly. In no time, sir.

Place: ..... Speaker A :..... Speaker B :.....Function.....

- 26- A: I want to book a train ticket to Aswan.  
B: All right. The price is L.E. 40 one way and L.E. 70 return.  
A : I want it return, please.

Place: ..... Speaker A :..... Speaker B :.....Function.....

- 27- A : I don't know how to pronounce some English words  
B : Dictionaries are on the second shelf in the comer.  
A : Thanks a lot. I'll take your advice.

Place: ..... Speaker A :..... Speaker B :.....Function.....

- 28- A car hit my car and broke its door.  
B : Have you got the number of the car ?  
A: Taxi 37645  
B : O.K. we'll fine the taxi - driver.

Place: ..... Speaker A :..... Speaker B :.....Function.....

- 29- A : I am fascinated by chemistry.  
B : That's fine, you can join our research team in the field of bacteriology.  
A : Alright. Thanks for your advice.

Place: ..... Speaker A :..... Speaker B :.....Function.....

- 30- A : I got to grips with the instructions for the new video player.  
B : I'm sure, you would be very pleased as you use our products.  
A : Thanks a lot for your help.

Place: ..... Speaker A :..... Speaker B :.....Function.....

- 31- A : Can I buy ten couples of colour birds ?  
B : Of course, after you fill in a form and pay the price.  
A : Where ?  
B : At the Zoo manager office on your left.

Place: ..... Speaker A :..... Speaker B :.....Function.....

- 32- A : I come from England.  
B : Are you coming for work ?  
A : Yes, I have some work in the New valley project near Siwa.  
B : I wish you would enjoy your stay. Don't forget to take dates back with you to England; they are the best dates.

Place: ..... Speaker A :..... Speaker B :.....Function.....

- 33- A : A thief broke into my house and broke the wooden window.  
B : I'll bring my tools and come to your house to repair it in half an hour's time.  
A : Thanks a lot, I'm waiting for you at home.

Place: ..... Speaker A :..... Speaker B :.....Function.....

34. A. I'd like to deposit LE 50 to my savings account, please.  
B. Of course. Just complete one of these forms and return to this counter.  
A. Where can I fill in this form ?  
B ? You can stand here on the side next to the queue.

Place: ..... Speaker A :..... Speaker B :.....Function.....

- 35- A : What time will you be checking out tomorrow ?  
B : I have to leave early to catch my flight. I'd like a 6 a.m. wake-up call.  
A : Well, you can check out tonight and I will arrange it. I hope you have enjoyed your stay with us.  
B : Yes, I have. Thank you.

Place: ..... Speaker A :..... Speaker B :.....Function.....

- 36- A. : How long have you been feeling unwell ?  
B : Since Thursday  
A : I see. Well, you need to go to bed, keep warm and rest for a few days. Take one of these tablets : three times a day. They should bring your temperature down and help with the headaches.  
B : Thank you.

Place: ..... Speaker A :..... Speaker B :.....Function.....

## Work Book Exercises

### Reviews:

#### (A)

1. **A:** Good morning. Can I help you?  
**B:** Yes, it's my father's birthday soon. I'd like to buy him a book about space travel.  
**A:** These two are very popular. This one is ten pounds and this is five pounds.  
**B:** Could I have the one that's five pounds, please?

*Place.....A.....B.....Function.....*

2. **A:** Can you turn the television on for me, please, Ali?  
**B:** OK, Mum. What's on?  
**A:** The Olympic Games. It's gymnastics this afternoon.  
**B:** Really? I'd like to watch that, too.

*Place .....A.....B.....Function.....*

#### (C)

1. **A:** Excuse me. Do you speak English?  
**B:** Yes, I do. How can I help you?  
**A:** Could you tell me the way to the Cairo Tower, please?  
**B:** Yes. Cross this road, take the first road on the right, the tower is at the end of that road.

*Place .....A.....B.....Function.....*

2. **A:** We have to give our English homework in today.  
**B:** I know, but I don't know where my book is.  
**A:** Isn't it in your school bag?  
**B:** No, I think I must have left it at home.

*Place .....A.....B.....Function.....*

#### (F)

1. **A:** Good morning. Please sit down. Thank you for your application and CV. Could you tell me a little more about the work you are doing at the moment?  
**B:** Yes, I work full-time as a sales assistant at a supermarket in town, but I'm also training to be an accountant.

*Place .....A.....B.....Function.....*

2. **A:** Hello and welcome to the History Department. My name's Hilary Benson. Before we start the BA course, are there any questions?  
**B:** Yes. I'd like to know whether there's a list of books for this course.  
**A:** Yes, there is. I'll give you all one at the end of today's session.  
**B:** Thank you very much.

*Place .....A.....B.....Function.....*

### Practical Tests

#### PT:(I)

1. **A:** So, John, could you tell our listeners how you started?  
**B:** Certainly. It was when I was seven. I won first prize in a poetry competition.  
**A:** And now it's your full-time job?  
**B:** That's right. My second novel was published last year.

*Place .....A.....B.....Function.....*

2. **A:** Could you help me carry the shopping into the house, please, Aisha?



**B:** OK, Mum. Where shall I put it?

**A:** Just put the bags on the kitchen floor for the moment.

*Place .....A.....B.....Function.....*

**(2)**

1. **A:** At last we're here. What time does our flight leave, Dad?

**B:** At midday. We've still got lots of time.

**A:** Are you sure we have everything we need?

**B:** Yes, I'm sure. Please stop worrying, Ali!

*Place .....A.....B.....Function.....*

2. **A:** for your homework, I want you to make a list of the plants in your neighbourhood.

**B:** Shall we just write the names of the plants?

**A:** No, write the names and a short description.

**B:** When is the homework for?

**A:** Next Thursday, please.

*Place .....A.....B.....Function.....*

**(3)**

1. **A:** Excuse me, sir. The captain has asked everyone to return to their seats.

**B:** Does that mean we are going to land soon?

**A:** Yes, in about 15 minutes.

*Place .....A.....B.....Function.....*

2. **A:** Have you seen Tarek?

**B:** No, sir. He was at his desk on the phone a few minutes ago.

**A:** Isn't he there now?

**B:** No, maybe he's gone home already.

**A:** He can't have gone home. He's preparing a report for me.

*Place .....A.....B.....Function.....*

**(4)**

1. **A:** Is there anything I can do to help, Miss Salma?

**B:** Could you give these books back to the class after break?

**A:** Yes, of course. Is that the homework we did last week?

**B:** Yes, that's right. Your homework was very good.

*Place .....A.....B.....Function.....*

2. **A:** Excuse me. I need to find out about modern farming in Egypt for a university project.

**B:** All the information on agriculture is on the second floor.

**A:** Thank you. Can I take any of the books out?

*Place .....A.....B.....Function.....*

**(5)**

1. **A:** Do you remember what happened?

**B:** No, I just remember waking up in the road.

**A:** How do you feel now?

**B:** Not too bad. Will I have to stay here tonight?

**A:** We're not sure yet. We'll have to check you have no broken bones.

*Place .....A.....B.....Function.....*

2. **A:** Could you tell us why you would like to study here?

**B:** Your Biology Department has a very good reputation.

**A:** And if we accept you, what do you hope to do when you graduate?

**B:** Well, I'd like to work for a food company.

*Place .....A.....B.....Function.....*

**(6)**

1. **A:** Are you in your first year?

**B:** Yes. I'm studying English. but it's only my third week

**A:** My parents would like me to apply here. Would you recommend it?

**B:** Yes, definitely.

*Place .....A.....B.....Function.....*

2. **A:** Well, your application has been successful.

**B:** That's great when do I start?

**A:** At the beginning of next month. You'll be working at our Cairo branch.

**B:** I'm looking forward to starting.

*Place .....A.....B.....Function.....*

***With My Best Wishes***  
***MR. Ayman M. Ebrahim***  
***ELmahalla Secondary School For Boys***

## 3-Units of Hello 8 Vocabulary and Expressions

### جميع تعريفات المنهج

- Representative:** someone who is chosen to do things, speak, vote
- Launch (n):** when a spacecraft is sent into space
- Leak (n):** a small hole that liquid or gas gets out through
- Mission:** an important job that someone has been given to do
- Secret (adj):** known about by only a few people
- System:** an organized way of doing something.
- Astronomer:** is the person who predicts the weather.
- Astronaut:** Is the person who travels into space.
- Currently:** happening at the present time
- Gravity:** the force that makes objects fall to the ground
- Gymnastics:** a sport in which skilful physical exercises and movements are performed
- Side effect:** an unexpected result of an activity, situation or event
- Spin (v):** to turn around and around very quickly
- Spoke (n):** one of the thin metal bars connect the ring outside of a wheel to the centre
- Attach:** to fasten or join one thing to another
- Weightless:** having no weight (especially when you are floating in space)
- Debate (n):** an organized discussion on an important subject
- Escapism:** entertainment or activity that helps you to forget about your work or worries and think of something more enjoyable
- Coronation:** a ceremony in which somebody officially becomes a king or queen
- Classics:** the study of the language, literature and history of ancient Greece and Rome
- Castle:** large strong building built in the past to protect the people inside from attack
- Fictional:** not real, invented by a writer
- Publication:** when a book is printed and available to buy
- Occasion:** an important event or ceremony
- Couple:** two people who are married or have a romantic relationship
- Wealthy:** rich; having a lot of money, land or valuable possessions
- Energy:** Power used from different sources to produce heat
- Geothermal energy:** Heat coming out from inside the Earth
- Nuclear energy:** Power produced by splitting or joining atoms
- Solar power:** Power produced by the heat of the sun.
- Renewable energy:** Energy that will never run out. (last forever)
- Non-renewable energy:** Energy that will run out. (fossil fuel )
- Hydro-electric power:** Using water to generate electricity .
- Waste:** Materials left after using some thing which isn't needed.
- Fossil fuel:** Fuel from under the ground such as; oil – coal – natural gas.
- Oasis:** A beautiful place in the desert where plants and water are found.
- Land fill:** A large deep hole where rubbish is disposed or buried.
- Recycling:** The process of re-using materials (paper-glass) several times.
- Competition:** An organized event in which people or teams compete against each other.

- Routine:** The usual way in which some one does something.
- Red tape:** Official and unnecessary rules and prevent things from being done quickly.
- Fashion:** The style of clothes, hair—etc that is popular at a particular time.
- Literature:** Books, poems, plays etc that are considered to be very good and important.
- District:** An area of a city or country.
- Diplomat:** Someone is employed by the government to live in another country.
- Politician:** Someone who works in politics.
- Earthquake:** A sudden shaking of the Earth's surface that often causes much damage.
- Society:** A large group of people who live in the same country or area and share the same laws, ways of do something, religions ---etc.
- Fiction:** Books and stories about imaginary people or events..
- Soldier:** A member of the army, especially someone who isn't an officer.
- Poison:** A substance that can kill or harm you if you eat or drink it.
- Amnesia:** The medical condition of not being able to remember anything.
- Excavation:** Digging up the ground in order to find things from the past..
- Theater:** A building with a stage where plays are performed.
- Invasion:** Using military forces to enter a country to take control.
- Headquarter:** The place from which a company, organization, is controlled.
- Spy:** Someone whose job is to find out secret information about a country—etc.
- Transmitter:** a piece of equipment that sends out radio or television signals
- Natural:** Not made, caused, or controlled by humans.
- Cell:** The smallest part of an animal or plant that can exist on its own..
- Sap:** The liquid that carries food through a plant.
- Ring:** an object in the shape of a circle.
- Cardboard:** very stiff thick paper, used especially for making boxes
- Rubber:** A substance used for making tyres, boots, etc...
- Climate:** The typical weather conditions in an area.
- Weather:** The temperature and other conditions in a place at a particular time.
- Global warming:** An increase in world temperature, caused by an increase of carbon dioxide around the Earth.
- Turpentine:** A strong-smelling liquid used for removing paint
- Drought:** A long period of dry weather when there is not enough water.
- Borer:** A tool used to drill into trees to calculate their age without cutting them down.
- Tubes:** Pipes that liquid go through.
- Bark:** The tough outer layer of a tree that protects its living parts on the trunk.
- Trunk:** The strongest part of a tree that grows wider and supports branches .
- Root:** The underground part of a tree that hold down the tree securely.
- Leaves:** The food factory of a tree.
- Branches:** Grow out from the trunk and support the leaves.
- Fruit:** Produced by some trees every year...
- Underground:** A railway system under a city. (Br E) = subway (Am E )

- Commuter:** Someone who regularly travels to work, especially a long distance..
- Diameter:** A line that goes from one side of a circle to the other and through the centre.
- Monuments:** Old buildings or places that are very important and ancient.
- Enemy:** Someone who hates you and wants to harm you.
- Tunnel:** A long hole that has been dug under the ground or through a mountain.
- Cliff:** High steep rock or piece of land.
- Base:** The lowest part or surface of something.
- Biography:** A book about a person's life or all books like this considered as a group.
- Autobiography:** A book that someone writes about their own life.
- Best seller:** A book that a lot of people have bought.
- Author:** Someone who writes a book, article -----etc.
- Composer:** Someone who writes music.
- Will:** - Legal document in which you say who you want to give your money after you die  
- The determination to do something.
- Research:** Serious and detailed study of a subject to find out new information.
- Respectful:** Showing respect for someone or something محترم للآخرين.
- Respected:** Admired by many people for your achievements, skills etc محترم من الآخرين
- Nature:** Everything that exists in the world that is not made or controlled by man .
- The sun:** A giant ball of hot gases, which is 150 million kilometres from the Earth
- Eclipse:** When the sun or the moon seems to disappear as one of them is passing between the other one and the Earth.
- X- Rays:** A photograph of the inside of someone's body using Radiation.
- Atmosphere:** The mixture of gases that surrounds the Earth.
- Storm:** Very bad weather in which there is a lot of wind, rain, snow etc.
- Phenomenon:** Something unusual or difficult to understand that happens or exists .
- Lightening :** a bright flash of electrical light in the sky during a storm.
- Science:** 1-knowledge that is based on testing and proving facts.  
2- an area of science such as biology or chemistry.
- Theory:** An explanation for something that has not yet been proved to be true.
- Specialist:** Someone who knows a lot about a particular subject or has a lot of skill in it.
- Diabetes:** A disease in which there is too much sugar in your blood.
- Soil:** The top layer of the earth in which plants grow.
- Process:** A series of things you do to achieve a particular result.
- Cure:** medicine or treatment that can make an injury or illness better
- Achieve:** to succeed in doing something good or getting the result you want
- Count:** A man who has a high social rank in Europe for the family he comes from.
- Adventure:** An exciting experience in which dangerous or unusual things happen.
- Playwright:** Someone who writes plays.
- Accurate:** Exactly correct.
- Assistant:** someone who helps someone by doing the less important jobs.
- Finances:** The money that a person, a company etc has.

**Envy:** to wish you had something that someone else had.

**Revenge:** Something you do to punish someone who has harmed you.

**Treason:** The crime of doing something that could cause great harm to your country.

**Victim:** Someone who has been hurt or killed by someone or something.

**Celebrate:** to do something special as it is a special occasion, or because something good has happened

**Drum (n):** a round musical instrument you play by hitting it with hand or a stick

**Fireworks:** small objects that explode or bum with a coloured light, used for celebrating special events

**Landmark:** something that helps you recognize where you are, as a famous building

**Mark (v):** show that something is happening, especially an important event or change

**Position (n):** the place where someone or something is in relation to other things

**Procession:** a line of people or vehicles moving slowly as part of a ceremony

**Distinctive:** showing a person or thing to be different from others

**Event:** something that happens, especially important, interesting or unusual•

**Evolve:** to develop or make something develop gradually

**Folk:** traditional and typical of the ordinary people who live in a particular area

**Vary:** if things of the same type vary, they are all different from each other

**Narrator:** Someone who tells a story in a film, book etc.

**Society:** A large group of people who live in the same country and share the same laws, ways of doing things, religions etc.

**Encourage:** to try to persuade someone to do something by making them more confident.

**Staff:** The group of people who work for an organization.

**Stuff:** to fill the body of a dead animal with a special substance to preserve it and make it look alive.

**Inspector:** Someone whose job is to check that something is of a good enough standard and that rules are being obeyed.

**Argue:** To explain clearly why you think something is true or should be done.

**Appreciate:** To understand and enjoy the good qualities or value of something.

**Nightingale:** A small wild bird that sings beautifully especially at night.

**Licence:** An official document that gives you permission to do something.

## كل كلمات و تعبيرات المنهج الهامة

### Unit 1

examine	يفحص	Gravity	جاذبية / خطورة
launch	يطلق / اطلاق	gymnastics	العباب الجمباز
leak	رشح / تسرب	side effects	آثار جانبية
mission	مهمة / بعثة / مأمورية	spin (v)	يدور بسرعة (حول نفسه)
secret	سر / سري	spoke (n)	سلك العجلة
system	نظام	Distance	مسافة / بعد
currently	حاليا	weightless	عديم الوزن
location	موقع	weightlessness	انعدام الوزن
space shuttle	مكوك فضاء	Orbit	يدور حول (شئ)

### Expressions

on a radio programme	في برنامج إذاعي	get together	يجتمع - يتقابل
There is a problem with...	هناك مشكلة في	at a height of	علي ارتفاع
do space walks	يسير في الفضاء	Like a giant	كعملاق
make predictions about	يقوم بالتنبؤ عن	Find a cure for	يجد علاج لـ
first landing on the moon	أول هبوط علي القمر	go for a walk	يخرج للسير
do weightless sports	يمارس رياضات انعدام الوزن	a waste of money	مضيعة للمال
help solve problems	يساعد في حل المشكلات	It's expected that....	من المتوقع أن
a two-hour mission	مهمة لمدة ساعتين	make arrangements for	يعمل ترتيبات لـ
It's already arranged	إنها بالفعل مرتبة	over the years	علي مر السنين
do repairs	يقوم بالاصلاحت	for sure	بالتأكيد

### Unit 2

classics	دراسة الادب اليوناني و الروماني القديم	coronation	تتويج
couple	زوجان	Alike	متشابه
debate	مناظرة / يناقش	Attend	يحضر
escapism	الهروب من الواقع	Castle	قلعة
fictional story	قصة خيالية	the right to	الحق في
publication	مطبوعة / نشر	Occasion	مناسبة
Well-educated	على قدر جيد من التعليم	Wealthy	غنى / ثرى

### Expressions

well known for	مشهور بـ	take advice from	يأخذ نصيحة من
work as + job	يعمل كـ	do (something) as planned	يفعل كما هو مخطط له
In late + year	في أواخر عام	is about to	علي وشك
Make a lot of money	يكون مالا كثيرا (ثروة)	end happily	تنتهي نهاية سعيدة
Make regular visits to	يقوم بزيارات منتظمة لـ	have the right to	لدية الحق لكي
look so alike	يبدو متطابقين جدا	No, not in the least	لا، ليس علي الإطلاق
look at each other in astonishment	ينظرون في دهشة	See each other for the first time	يلتقون لأول مرة

### Unit3

liquid	سائل	Coal	الفحم
molten	منصهر	Atom	الذرة
nuclear	نووي	Atomic	ذري
pipe	أنبوبة / ينقل بالأنابيب	fossil fuels	وقود الحفريات
power station	محطة طاقة	Generate	يولد
pressure	ضغط	generation	توليد / جيل

geothermal	حرارى أرضى	hydroelectric power	طاقة كهرومائية
renewable	متجدد	Waste	نفايات / فضلات
non-renewable	غير متجدد	wind turbines	محرك يعمل بقوة الرياح

### Expressions

produce as much energy as	يُنتج طاقة كبيرة مثل	nothing can live without	لا شيء يعيش بدون
(be) used only once	تستخدم فقط مرة واحدة	can't afford to	لا يقدر مالياً علي
(be) pumped to the surface	يضخ للسطح	This is known as	هذا معروف كـ
in other ways	بطرق أخرى	in an open place	في مكان مكشوف
below the surface of	تحت سطح	come up throw	تصعد لأعلي من خلال
make fuel for	يصنع وقود لأجل	stop using up	توقف عن نفاذ
reduce our use of	يقلل من استخدامنا لـ	do a survey into	يقوم بمسح شامل علي

### Review A

launch	يطلق / اطلاق	Renewable	متجدد
side effects	آثار جانبية	Source	منبع النهر
alike	متشابه	Mouth	مصب النهر
fossil fuel	وقود الحفريات	Predict	يتنبأ بـ
power station	محطة طاقة	recommend	يوصى بـ / يرشح
have the right to	لديه الحق في	Distance	مسافة
generate	يولد	Capture	يستولى علي / يأسر/يحصل علي
electricity generation	توليد الكهرباء	Store	يخزن

### Unit4

competition	مسابقة / منافسة	Develop	يطور / ينمي
old-fashioned	موضة قديمة	District	حي سكنى / منطقة
routine	الروتين	Establish	يؤسس / يثبت
attachments	مرفقات	Law	قانون
midday	منتصف اليوم	Pioneer	رائد
custom	عادة	Style	أسلوب
publisher	ناشر	Prize	جائزة

### Expressions

old-fashioned dresses	فساتين موضة قديمة	at night	ليلاً
first prize in poetry	الجائزة الأولى في الشعر	I think that	أعتقد ذلك
all the lights went out	انطفأت كل الأنوار	in my opinion	في رأيي
since the age of	منذ سن ألب...	as far as I'm concerned	فيما يتعلق بـ
as well as writing	بلاضافة إلي كتابة	at midday	في منتصف النهار
graduate in / from	يتخرج من / في	by the power of	بقوة
at the same time	في نفس الوقت	a ten-minute break	فسحة لعشر دقائق

### Unit5

amnesia	فقدان الذاكرة	Identity	الهوية
excavation	التنقيب عن الآثار	Innocent	برئ
mousetrap	مصيدة فئران	Invasion	غزو
murder	جريمة قتل	secret agent	عميل سرى
poison	سم	Spy	جاسوس
leader	قائد	Espionage	الجاسوسية
shy	خجول	Suspect	شخص مشتبه فيه
headquarters	المقر الرئيسى	transmitter	جهاز ارسال

the queen of crime fiction.	ملكة جرائم الخيال	the orient express train	قطار الشرق السريع.
-----------------------------	-------------------	--------------------------	--------------------



that's the best way to	هذا هو أفضل طريق لـ	That's incredible	هذا لا يصدق
it's time for war / peace	انه وقت الحرب - السلام	On the way back to	في طريق العودة إلى
Without the help of	بدون مساعدة	perform without a break	يؤدي بدون توقف
to everyone's surprise	ولدهشة كل فرد	at a very young age	في سن مبكر جدا
deeply affected by	تأثر بشدة بـ	all over the world	في كل أنحاء العالم
win a prize for	يفوز بجائزة في	at any time	في أي وقت
on TV/ the radio / the internet	في التلفاز - الراديو -	do a crime	يرتكب جريمة
make a recommendation to / on	يقدم نصيحة لـ على	make more use of	يستفيد أكثر من

### Unit6

bark	اللحاء	Products	منتجات
harden	يجعله صلبا	Rubber	مطاط
ring	حلقة	Sap	عصارة
tube	أنبوب	toothpaste	معجون أسنان
cardboard	ورق مقوى / كرتون	Turpentine	زيت من شجر الصنوبر
instrument	أداة	Calculate	يحسب
extract	يستخرج / يستخلص	Width	عرض / اتساع

### Expressions

let's move on to	دعنا نتحول إلى	do no damage to	لا يسبب ضرر إلى
at the ends of	في أطراف	for much longer	لوقت أطول كثيرا
get a headache	لدية صداع	make a list of	يعد قائمة بـ
set rules	يضع قواعد	research on the internet	بحث علي الانترنت
play the piano	يعزف علي البيانو	freshly -cut tree trunk	جذوع مقطوعة حديثة
take turns to	يأخذ دورة لـ	along the side of the street	بمحاذاة الطريق
keep away from	يبعد عن	in this way	و بهذه الطريقة

### Review B

suspect	مشتبه فيه	Criminal	مجرم
support	يدعم / يسند	Absorb	يمتص
murder	جريمة قتل	Detective	مخبر سرى
spy	جاسوس	Innocent	برئ
cardboard	ورق مقوى / كرتون	Capture	يستولى على / يأسر
attachment	مرفق / ملحق	competition	مسابقة
secret identity	هوية سرية	Weapons	أسلحة

### Unit7

commuter	مسافر الى و من العمل	Carve	ينحت
diameter	قطر	Cliff	منحدر صخري شاهق
engineering	الهندسة	Illuminate	ينير / يضيئ
investment	استثمار	monument	أثر
invest	يستثمر	be positioned	يوضع في مكان معين
investor	مستثمر	Raise	يرفع / يربى
massive	ضخم / هائل	Rays	أشعة
base	قاعدة	unthinkable	غير وارد التفكير فيه

### Expressions

to the end of	إلى نهاية	It is considered to be	انه يعتبر بمثابة
It's a lot newer than	انه أجدد كثيرا من	give a reason for	يعطي سببا / مبررا لـ
take a train / a bus	يستقل (وسيلة مواصلات)	at certain times of the year	في اوقات محددة

go from one end to the other يسير من نهاية طرف إلى الآخر	The whole thing sounds like a..... الأمر كله يبدو كأنه
cut into pieces يقطع لأجزاء	make plans to rescue يصنع خططا لإنقاذ
keep the attackers out يبقي المهاجمين بالخارج	have effects on له تأثيرات على
come to an agreement on يتوصل لاتفاق بشأن	five metres in diameter قطرة خمسة أمتار

### Unit8

admit يعترف / يقر	Blackmail بيتز / ابتزاز
biography سيرة حياة شخص	Colleague زميل عمل
knock يطرق / طرق	Commit يرتكب
permanently بصفة دائمة	Crime جريمة
profession مهنة	human nature الطبيعة البشرية
recuperate يتعافى / يستجم	in conflict فى حالة صراع
respectable محترم	personality شخصية
appearance مظهر	Will وصية / ارادة

### Expressions

live on the island يعيش فوق الجزيرة	have a very interesting life لدية حياة شيقة جدا
commit a crime يرتكب جريمة	badly injured أصيب بشدة
it's been best seller ever since انه أكثر بيعا منذ ذلك الحين	spend a lot of time in bed يقضي وقتا طويلا في الفراش
go abroad to يذهب للخارج لكي	on the internet على الانترنت
go on holiday يذهب بأجازة	it's rather late إنها متأخرة إلي حد ما
find it quite difficult to وجدها صعبة جدا لكي	do secret experiments on يقوم بتجارب سرية على
at the moment في هذه اللحظة	end badly for ينتهي بشكل سيء لـ
at the same time as في نفس الوقت مثل	look his best يبدو في أحسن صورته

### Unit9

geyser نبع ماء حار	Cause سبب
volcano بركان	Drought الجفاف
electric storm عاصفة كهربية	Lightning البرق
absorb يمتص	Northern شمالي
eclipse كسوف / خسوف	Occur يحدث / يقع
harmful ضار	phenomenon ظاهرة
sight منظر / البصر	Rainfall سقوط الامطار
ultraviolet rays أشعة فوق بنفسجية	Southern جنوبي

### Expressions

definitely not بالقطع لا	still little worried لا يزال قلقا قليلا
get heat and light from يحصل على حرارة و ضوء من	There's nothing wrong with ليس هناك عيب في
give heat and light يعطي حرارة و ضوء	falling from the sky متساقطة من السماء
have problems with لدية مشاكل مع	all over the country في جميع أنحاء الدولة
at the centre of في منتصف	damage sight يؤدي / يضر البصر
get too near يقترّب كثيرا جدا	lift people off their feet ترفع الناس من أقدامهم
become too full يصبح ممتلئ جدا	give an explanation يعطي تفسيراً
from time to time من وقت لآخر	give a ray of hope يعطي شعاعاً من الأمل

## Unit 10

achieve	يحقّق / ينجز	Theory	نظرية
cancer	السرطان	Amount	كمية / مقدار
cure	علاج	Invisible	غير مرئي
diabetes	مرض السكر	Release	يطلق / اطلاق
gradually	بالتدريج	Gain	يزداد / يكتسب
result	نتيجة	Regularly	بانتظام
specialise	يتخصص	Process	عملية

## Expressions

keep up with	يساير / يجاري / يواكب	let's make sure	دعنا نتأكد
do well in the test	يؤدي أداء حسنا في الامتحان	gain weight	يزداد وزنا
do experiments	يجري تجارب معملية	lose weight	يخس وزنا
do more revision	يراجع كثيرا	at the end of the process	في نهاية العملية
do research on (into) diseases	يجري بحث على	prove a theory	يثبت نظرية
do better	تتحسن في الأداء	find a cure for illness	يجد علاج للأمراض
do something useful	يقوم بعمل شيء مفيد	look on the internet	يبحث على الانترنت
check ideas	يراجع (يفحص) الأفكار	I hope so	أتمني ذلك
pass down through	تنتقل من خلال	make a discovery	يقوم باكتشاف

## Unit 11

finance (n / v)	تمويل / يمول	accuse of	يتهم بـ
finance	موارد مالية	Envious	حسود
historical	تاريخي	Fiancé	خطيب
lecturer	مُحاضر	Fiancée	خطيبة
object to (v)	يعترض علي	Recognize	يتعرف علي
assistant	مساعد	Revenge	الثأر / الانتقام / ينتقم
imprisonment	الحبس / السجن	Treason	الخيانة
playwright	كاتب مسرحي	Victim	ضحية

## Expressions

take revenge	ينتقم من شخص	on his wedding day	في يوم زفافه
in revenge for	انتقاما من	be sent to prison for his life	يرسل إلي السجن مدى الحياة
desire for revenge	رغبة للانتقام	make money	يكون نقودا
fall asleep	يغلبه النعاس	take care of	يعتني بـ
reach an agreement	يصل لاتفاق	write in his style	يكتب بأسلوبه
be / get married to	يتزوج من	keep at home	يبقي بالمنزل
write under different names	يكتب تحت أسماء مختلفة	show no sign of recognition	تجاهلني وكأنه لم يرايني
catch up with	يلحق بـ / يساير / يواكب	miss the school work	يفوته العمل المدرسي
get the credit	ينال الثقة	look with envy	ينظر نظرة حسد

## Unit 12

celebrate	يحتفل	Distinctive	مميّز وواضح
drum	طبله	Event	حدث (هام)
fireworks	ألعاب نارية	Evolve	يتطور
landmark	مَعْلَم هام	Folk	شعبي
mark (v/n)	يكون إيذانا ببدء	responsibility	مسئولية

position	وضع / مكان / مكانة	Vary	يتنوع / يختلف
procession	موكب	Harvest	الحصاد / يحصد

### Expressions

have your own style	لديك أسلوبك	in the same way	بنفس الطريقة
have a special purpose	لدية غرض خاص	in the open air	في الهواء الطلق
with this in mind	مع اخذ هذا في الاعتبار	in relation to	بالنسبة لـ
It's our responsibility to	انها مسئوليتنا	keep the music alive	يبقى الموسيقى حية
play on an instrument	يعزف علي آلة موسيقية	be increasingly used	تستخدم بشكل متزايد
make sculptures	يقوم بأعمال النحت	sing babies to sleep	تغني للأطفال ليناموا
make a model of	يصمم نموذج لـ		

### Unit 13

argue for	يجادل لصالح	Effective	فعال / مؤثر
degree	درجة / شهادة علمية	Flight	رحلة طيران
encourage	يشجع	impressive	مؤثر / مبهر
inspector	مفتش	Licence	رخصة
personal	شخصي	Nursing	التمريض
positive	ايجابي	Solo	منفرد / عمل منفرد
role	دور	Suitable	مناسب
be in charge of	مسئول عن	Employ	يوظف / يشغل

### Expressions

(be) awarded degree	منح درجة علمية	break the record	يحطم الرقم القياسي
(be) better known to..(as)	معروفة جيدا لدي	do a job	يقوم بمهمة
(be) born into wealthy family	ثري النشء	for the love of flying	من أجل حب الطيران
(be) in charge of	مسئول عن	get a good education	يحصل علي تعليم جيد
(make) solo flight	يقوم برحلة جوية فردية	give an example of	يعطي مثالا لـ
at a time	في وقت ما في الماضي	have access to	يكون علي اتصال بـ
at the age of	في سن	miss the record	يفقد الرقم القياسي
the person in charge	المسئول / المشرف	well-trained nursing staff	هيئة تمريض مدربة جيدا

### Unit 14

banking	الصرافة / أعمال البنوك	conventional	تقليدي
bully	بلطجي / يمارس البلطجة	find out	يكشف
excitement	إثارة	Funeral	جنازة
influential	مؤثر / ذو نفوذ	lead to	يؤدي إلي
regard ... as	يعتبر	Lifestyle	أسلوب حياة
storyteller	راوي القصة	spontaneous	تلقائي
adventurous	مغامر	spontaneously	بشكل تلقائي

### Expressions

be careful = watch out	احترس	give up his job	يقطع عن وظيفته
change people for the better	تغير الي الافضل	have an effect on	له تأثير علي
earn/ make money	يكسب مالا	make decisions	يتخذ قرارات
enjoy company	يستمتع بصحبة شخص ما	miss(sb) very much	يشتاق...إلي
get on well with	ينسجم مع	behave in a different way	يتصرف بشكل مختلف
give advice to	يعطي نصيحة لـ	for this reason	لهذا السبب

### Unit 15

available	متاح / متوافر	encyclopedia	موسوعة / دائرة معارف
download	يقوم بتحميل من الانترنت	Mixture	خليط / مزيج
enthusiastic about	متحمس بشأن	press (v)	يضغط / يكوي (الملابس)
gadget	جهاز صغير	recycle (v)	يعيد استخدام
paperback (book)	(كتاب) ذو غلاف ورقي	Roller	بكرة / اسطوانة
screen	شاشة	soak (v)	ينقع أو يغمر في سائل
bleach (v)	يبيض / يجعل لونه أبيض	Roll	يدور / يلف / يسوي

### Expressions

(be) on the move	يتحرك / ينتقل من مكان إلى مكان	I can't afford	لا أقدر علي
a range of books	سلسلة من الكتب	on the other hand	علي الجانب الآخر
at anytime	في أي وقت	(PTO) please turn over	من فضلك اقلب الصفحة
give access to	يعطي مدخل لـ	reduce (go down)	يقلل
hold information	تستوعب معلومات	you'd better + inf	من الأفضل

### Unit 16

ambitious	طمّوح	Module	وحدة دراسية
applicant	متقدم (لوظيفة مثلا)	achievement	إنجاز
conscientious	مجد ومجتهد	Fluent	طليق / فصيح (في لغة)
CV = curriculum vitae	السيرة الذاتية	neighbourhood	منطقة سكنية
(well) established	ذات مكانة مرموقة	Skill	مهارة
pharmacy	صيدلية	Trainee	متدرب
sociable	اجتماعي	conscience	الضمير
well-organised	منظم جدا	day-care centre	مركز لرعاية الأطفال أو الكبار

### Expressions

awarded an honorary degree	يمنح درجة علمية فخرية	a modular science degree	يعمل درجة علمية علي جزء معين
apply in writing	يتقدم بطلب كتابي	do a course in	يأخذ دورة في
get a well-salaried job	يحصل على وظيفة مجزية	have a contact with	علي اتصال بـ
have a degree in	يحصل علي درجة علمية	have a good command of	يجيد / يتقن
hold a driving licence	يحمل رخصة قيادة	in honour of	تكريما / تشريفا لـ
it doesn't matter	لا يهم	the highest grade in	أعلي درجة في

### Unit 17

celebrity	شخص مشهور	Cave	كهف
civil servant	موظف حكومي	Greed	الجشع
correspondent	مراسل	Scorpion	عقرب
depression	كساد	throw away (out)	يتخلص من شيء برميه
diver	غواص	stung / stung / stung	يلدغ
force (v)	يجبر / يرغم	Treat	يعالج / يعامل
pearl	لؤلؤ	Merchant	تاجر
publicity	دعاية / شهرة / شعبية	stinging (adj.)	لاذع

## Expressions

a relative on my father's side	قريب من جهة الاب	seek / avoid publicity	يسعون - يتجنبوا الشهرة
break out of the prison	يهرب من السجن	well paid jobs	وظائف ذو عائد مجزي
careful with money	حريص علي المال	do business with	يتاجر مع
blind to reality	أعمى عن الحقيقة	away from mischief	يبعد عن الشر
intrude into	يتطفل	kill by mistake	يقتل بالخطأ
play tricks on	يخدع	go diving	يذهب للغطس
badly paid jobs	وظائف ذو عائد ضعيف	take pride in	يتباهي بـ

## Unit 18

enroll on	يسجل / يدرج اسمه	department	قسم
ideal	مثالي / أفضل	Promotion	ترقية / ترويج
mature	ناضج (يزيد سنه عن 25 سنة)	Provide	يوفر / يتيح
retrain	يعيد تدريب	Qualified	مؤهل
rewarding	مجزي / عائد بالنفع	Employer	صاحب العمل أو الشركة
similar	مشابه / مماثل	Employee	عامل / موظف
worthwhile	جدير بالاهتمام / مفيد	employable	صالح للعمل

## Expressions

(do) an evening course	يقوم بدورة مسائية	(on) the internet	علي الانترنت
at any age	في أي سن	become out of date	تصبح موضحة قديمة
do a job	يقوم بمهمة	do most of the work	يقوم بمعظم الأعمال
do the homework	يعمل الواجب	enroll on	يسجل اسمه في
highly qualified staff	هيئة موظفين مؤهلين عاليا	highly skilled jobs	وظائف ذو مهارة عالية
it's a deal for me	انه حامي الذي أبعيه	all over the world	في كل أنحاء العالم

## Language notes

✍ <b>affect</b> (v): يؤثر على بدون حرف جر	Smoking <b>affects</b> health badly.
✍ <b>effect</b> (n): تأثير بعدها حرف جر	Smoking <b>has a bad effect on</b> health.
✍ <b>explore</b> : يستكشف (مكان / احتمالات)	You can <b>explore</b> the countryside on foot.
✍ <b>invent</b> : يخترع (شيء لم يكن موجودا من قبل)	The satellite was <b>invented</b> in 1957.
✍ <b>discover</b> : يكتشف (شيء كان موجودا من قبل)	Columbus <b>discovered</b> America.
✍ <b>arrive</b> : يصل ( لا يليه مفعول به)	The plane has just <b>arrived</b> .
✍ <b>arrive at</b> : يصل إلى (مكان صغير محدود)	The plane <b>arrived at</b> Cairo Airport on time.
✍ <b>arrive in</b> : يصل إلى (دولة / عاصمة / مدينة كبيرة)	The plane <b>arrived in</b> Cairo on time.
✍ <b>reach</b> : يصل إلى (يليه مفعول به)	I won't <b>reach</b> the office till noon today.
✍ <b>queue</b> : طابور (يقف فيه الناس واحدا تلو الآخر)	There is a <b>queue</b> in front of the cinema.
✍ <b>row</b> : صف (من الناس أو الأشياء جنباً إلى جنب)	I'd like to sit in the second <b>row</b> .
✍ <b>reason for</b> : سبب ( يليها اسم أو فعل ينتهي بـ ing)	I don't know the <b>reason for</b> his failure.
✍ <b>reason why</b> : سبب / مبرر ( يليها جملة)	I don't know the <b>reason why</b> he failed.
✍ <b>cause</b> (n) of: سبب ( يليها اسم)	What was the <b>cause of</b> the fire?
✍ <b>spend</b> + <b>v.</b> + <b>ing</b> + <b>مدة زمنية</b> + <b>في</b> .....	
She <b>spent</b> the evening <b>writing</b> invitations to her friends.	
✍ <b>gymnastics</b> : ألعاب الجمباز ( يليها الفعل في صيغة المفرد)	
<b>Gymnastics</b> is a sport in which physical exercises and movements are performed.	
✍ <b>a two-hour mission</b> : مهمة لمدة ساعتين	
لاحظ أن two-hour عبارة عن صفة مركبة و الصفة لا تجمع و لذلك لم نجعل كلمة hour	
كلما ..... كلما: صيغة مقارنة + <b>the</b> , صيغة مقارنة + <b>The</b>	

**The more** people want to do something, **the cheaper** it will become.

✍ **make** + مصدر + مفعول يجعل Mr Yacoub **made us do** the exercise again.

في حالة المبنى للمجهول نستخدم (مصدر + to)

We were **made to do** the exercise again.

✍ **way of** + v. + ing / **to** + مصدر وسيلة لـ

There are many **ways of solving / to solve** the problem.

✍ **couple**: زوجان / اثنان من نوع واحد Mr and Mrs Hani are a happy **couple**.

My leg got better in a **couple of** days.

✍ **pair**: زوج من (شيء واحد يتكون من جزئين)

What do you think of this **pair** of shoes / gloves / glasses / trousers?

✍ **alike**: متشابهه The children all look very **alike**.

✍ **similar ... to**: مشابه / متشابهه Brass is **similar to** gold in colour

✍ **the same ... as**: نفس الشيء Ali is **the same** age as Hani.

✍ **borrow**: يستلف / يستعير He **borrowed** some money **from** the bank.

✍ **lend**: يسلف / يقرض: The bank **lent** the businessman 500000 pounds.

✍ **decide to** + مصدر: يقرر In the end, we **decided to go** to the theatre.

✍ **decide on** + اسم: يختار I've **decided on blue** for the bathroom.

✍ **allow** + مصدر + مفعول + **to**: يسمح Father **let me go** on a tour round Luxor.

✍ **let** + مصدر + مفعول + **to go**: يدع Father **allowed me to go** on a tour round Luxor.

✍ **steal**: يسرق شيء The thieves **stole** five million dollars from the bank.

✍ **rob**: يسرق من مكان أو شخص They **robbed** a bank last week.

Someone **robbed me (of my watch)** last night.

✍ as + pp: هو هنا اختصار لجملة كانت مبنية للمجهول as استخدام التصريف الثالث بعد

The coronation takes place **as planned**.

= The coronation takes place **as it has been planned**.

✍ **split / split / split**: ينقسم / ينفصل / ينشطر / يشطر

When atoms **split**, enormous amounts of energy are released.

✍ **spill / spilt / spilt**: يسكب / ينسكب The milk **spilt** all over the floor.

✍ **lie / lied / lied**: يكذب Don't **lie** to me. I know everything.

✍ **lie / lay / lain**: يرقد / ينام / يقع (للمكان) He **lay** in bed listening to the birds singing.

The town **lies** to the east of the river.

✍ **lay / laid / laid**: يضع / يُعدّ / يُرتّب He **laid** the book on the table.

The hens have **laid** a lot of eggs. She **laid** the table for lunch.

✍ **made of**: مصنوع من (مادة أو مواد لا يتغير شكلها بعد التصنيع) She bought a bag **made of** leather.

✍ **made from**: مصنوع من (مادة أو مواد يتغير شكلها بعد التصنيع) Bread is **made from** flour.

✍ **another** + اسم مفرد يعد / **one**: آخر (إضافي / مختلف)

I'm going to have **another piece** of cake. Do you want to exchange this shirt for **another one**?

✍ **another** + few / عدد + اسم جمع: I'd like to extend my stay for **another three / few weeks**.

✍ **other** + اسم جمع يعد / **one**: آخر I don't want this shirt. Give me the other one.

Tom and three **other boys** went fishing this afternoon.

✍ **others**: الآخرون (تشير إلى الأشخاص و الأشياء) Some people are rich while **others** are poor.

✍ **Be used to** + مصدر: يستخدم لـ Wood is **used to make** furniture.

✍ **Be used for** + v. + ing: يستخدم لـ Wood is **used for making** furniture.

✍ **take** + مصدر + to + مدة زمنية Fossil fuels have **taken millions of years to form**.

✍ **win (won / won)**: يفوز بـ / يكسب (يأتي بعده الشيء الذي نفوز به أو نكسبه)

**win**: (a medal / a cup / a race / a competition / a match / an award / a prize)

- ☞ **beat** (beat / beaten): يهزم / يتغلب على (يأتي بعده الشخص أو الفريق المهزوم)  
beat: (someone شخص / a team فريق)
- ☞ **gain** (gained / gained): يكتسب / يزداد  
gain: (experience خبرة/information معلومات / Knowledge معرفة) يكتسب  
(weight وزن / height طول / speed سرعة) يزداد
- ☞ **earn** (earned / earned): يكسب (من العمل الجاد)  
earn money / his living يكسب المال / عيشه (من العمل الجاد)
- ☞ **habit**: (عادة شخصية) I wish I could stop smoking. It is a very bad habit.
- ☞ **custom**: عرف ساند في المجتمع It is a custom in Egypt to eat salted fish on Sham El-Nesseim.
- ☞ **experience**: (اسم لا يعدو ولا يسبقها أداة نكرة) خبرة I'm afraid I don't have much sales experience.
- ☞ **experiences**: موافق / تجارب / خبرات (الأحداث التي يمر بها الانسان في حياته)  
His experiences in Germany were rather depressing.
- ☞ **experiment**: تجربة (تستخدم عندما نتحدث عن العلماء و أبحاثهم)  
They did a number of experiments last week.
- ☞ **a ten-minute break**: راحة / فسحة لمدة عشر دقائق  
لاحظ عدم جمع الكلمات الدالة على الزمن أو الوقت اذا جاء قبلها عدد و بعدها اسم
- a three-hour meeting** اجازة لمدة أسبوعين **a two-week holiday** اجتماع لمدة 3 ساعات

- ☞ **be able to + مصدر**: قادر على I wasn't able to phone you yesterday.
- ☞ **enable ... to + مصدر**: يمكن ... من Computers enable us to work faster.
- ☞ **be capable of + v. + ing**: قادر على He is capable of climbing Everest.
- ☞ **shy**: خجول بطبيعته My children are very shy in front of strangers.
- ☞ **ashamed**: يشعر بالخجل و الذنب من خطأ قام به  
I am sorry! I feel quite **ashamed** of myself for forgetting to post your letter.
- ☞ **include**: يشمل / يشتمل على The meal includes meat and rice.
- ☞ **including**: بما في ذلك Ten people including 3 girls were injured in the accident.
- ☞ **contain**: (بداخله) يحتوى على I lost a file containing a lot of important documents.
- ☞ **consist of**: يتكون من The team consists of four Europeans and two Americans.
- ☞ **look forward to + v. + ing**: يتطلع الى I'm looking forward to seeing you.
- ☞ **What about + v. + ing / اسم** ؟ مارأيك في / ماذا عن ..... ؟  
What about going to the club? What about this dress?

- ☞ **manage to + مصدر**: يتمكن من - He managed to cross the Nile.
- ☞ **succeed in + v. + ing / اسم**: ينجح في He succeeded in (passing) the driving test.
- ☞ لاحظ استخدام الاسم بعد حرف الجر **in**
- 3 metres in height 5 inches in length 5 centimetres in depth
- ☞ وفي حالة عدم وجود حرف جر نستخدم الصفة
- 3 metres high 5 inches long 5 centimetres deep

- ☞ **rise** (rose / risen): تشرق / يزداد / يستيقظ / يقف / يتصاعد (لا يليه مفعول)  
The sun rises in the east. Prices have risen by 10%.  
She rises at 6 every day. He rose from his chair to greet me.
- ☞ **arise** (arose / arisen): يحدث (لا يليه مفعول) / ينشأ A lot of problems often arise in this factory.
- ☞ **raise** (raised / raised): يرفع / يجمع / يربي / يزيد / يثير (يليه مفعول)  
Raise your hand if you know the answer. They are raising money for the blind.  
Raise hopes آمال / fears مخاوف / suspicions شكوك / interest اهتمام
- ☞ **arouse** (aroused/aroused): يثير (يجعل الشخص يحس بشعور ما) (يليه مفعول)  
arouse feelings مشاعر / interest اهتمام / fears مخاوف / suspicions (doubts) شكوك
- ☞ **historic** (famous or important in history): تاريخي (ذو أهمية تاريخية)



**historic** building / place / event / moment / day / date / site / occasion / monuments

✍ **historical** (connected with the study of history): تاريخي (مرتبط بدراسة التاريخ)

**historical** papers / studies / plays / films / novels / events / sites / monuments / buildings

✍ **ever + PP.** = that have (has) ever been + PP

- The Great Wall of China is the longest structure **ever built**.

= It is the longest structure that has ever been built.

✍ **stop.....from + v. + ing:** يمنع ..... من

- They wanted to **stop** enemies **from attacking** their country.

✍ **respected:** يحظى بالاحترام و الاعجاب بسبب عمله أو انجازاته

Dr Magdi Yacoub is a **respected** heart surgeon.

✍ **respectable:** محترم (يتصرف بطريقة مقبولة اجتماعيا و أخلاقيا)

She is a **respectable** young woman from a good family

✍ **respectful:** يظهر الاحترام لـ

We should be **respectful** towards elderly people.

✍ **suggest + v. + ing:** يقترح

Tom **suggested going** to the club.

✍ **suggest + مصدر + فاعل / مصدر + should:** يقترح

Tom **suggested we go** to the club.

Tom **suggested we should go** to the club.

✍ **would rather + مصدر:** يفضل

**I'd rather have** dinner now.

✍ **would prefer + to + مصدر:** يفضل

**I'd prefer to have** dinner now.

✍ **wear + مفعول:** يكون مرتديا (تستخدم لوصف عادة أو مظهر الشخص)

When I saw him in the party, he was **wearing** his black suit.

We **wear** heavy clothes in winter.

✍ **put on + مفعول:** يقوم بارتداء

While I was **putting on** my coat, the phone rang.

**Put on** your shoes, Ali. We're leaving now.

✍ **dress = get dressed** (بدون مفعول) يلبس

Women take a long time to **dress (get dressed)**

✍ **northern / southern / eastern / western:** تستخدم اسم دولة أو منطقة

Alexandria is **in northern** Egypt. = Alexandria is **in the north of** Egypt.

✍ **cure:** يشفي (يأتي بعده اسم المرض أو الشخص المريض)

This medicine will **cure** your cough.

He managed to **cure** my aunt who had been ill all her life.

✍ **treat:** يعالج

The doctor **treated** him with aspirin.

✍ **regrettable:** (شيء) يؤسف له His behaviour at the party was very **regrettable**.

✍ **regretful:** شاعر بالخيال He was **regretful** when he had to leave his old house.

✍ **see / hear / listen to / watch / notice:**

يأتي بعد الأفعال السابقة مفعول ثم فعل ينهي بـ ing للتعبير عن جزء من الحدث أو يأتي بعدها مفعول ثم مصدر للتعبير عن الحدث ككل.

I saw him playing football. = I saw part of the game.

I saw him play football. = I saw the whole game.

✍ **reward:** يكافئ / مكافأة (يحصل عليها الفرد مقابل خدمة قام بها)

The company rewarded him for his honesty.

He gave the boy a **reward for** bringing back the lost dog.

✍ **award:** يمنح جائزة / جائزة (يحصل عليها الفرد نتيجة إنجاز حققه)

Her dog **was awarded** the blue ribbon شريط in the club show.

She won the 'Best Actress' **award**.

✍ **retire**: يتقاعد / يحال للمعاش : Egyptian employees retire at the age of 60.

✍ **resign**: يستقيل من العمل He resigned from the company to take a challenging job

✍ **be successful** = be a success: يكون ناجحاً

His first novel was successful.

His first novel was a success.

✍ **object to + v. + ing / noun**: يعترض على

He objected to his friends' accusations. He objected to having to rewrite the article.

✍ **landmark**: معلم هام -The Sphinx is a famous **landmark** in Egypt.

✍ **landscape**: منظر طبيعي -The **landscape** along the banks of the Nile is very beautiful.

✍ **keen on + v. + ing / noun**: مغرم بـ I'm not **keen on going** to the cinema.

✍ **unlike**: على العكس من - **Unlike** his father, he doesn't like music.

✍ **encourage + to + مفعول + مصدر**: يشجع ..... على .....  
My parents **encouraged me to study** medicine.

✍ **persuade + to + مفعول + مصدر**: يقنع ..... بأن .....  
He **persuaded me to join** a sports club.

✍ هناك ظروف معينة يمكن أن يبدأ بها الكلام و يأتي بعدها جملة كاملة مثل

**unfortunately** / **personally** بصفة شخصية / لسوء الحظ

**Personally**, I believe that everyone should study science at school.

✍ **voyage**: رحلة (بحرية / فضائية) During their **voyage** at sea, a storm blew.

✍ **journey**: رحلة طويلة (برية / جوية) She went with him on his **journey** to America.

✍ **flight**: رحلة طيران **Flight** No 765 from London was late for an hour.

✍ **good at + v. + ing**: ماهر في / جيد في: He was **good at telling** exciting stories.

✍ Whatever you do: تعبير يستخدم في الحديث لتحذير شخص من شيء ما (إياك أن ..)

Don't tell Paul, **whatever you do!** **Whatever you do**, don't move.

✍ **am / is / are + used to + v. + ing**: يعتاد على (عادة مستمرة): He **is used to getting** up early.

✍ **used to + inf. مصدر**: اعتاد على (تدل على عادة في الماضي) He **used to smoke** when he was young.

✍ لاحظ أن الصفات المنتهية بـ ed تصف العاقل و الصفات المنتهية بـ ing تصف غير العاقل.

relaxed مسترخى relaxing مريح للأعصاب

amazed مندهش amazing مندهش

bored ممل boring متضجر

✍ **trade in**: يتاجر في (سلعة) The company has been **trading in oil** for many years.

✍ **trade with**: يتاجر مع (أشخاص أو دول) The company **trades with china**.

✍ **make + مفعول + مصدر**: يجعل The terrible accident **made her cry**.

✍ **show / know + مصدر + how to**: يبين / يعرف

Can you **show me how to set** the video recorder?

Do you **know how to print** on this computer?

✍ **learn / teach + مصدر + how to + مصدر**: يتعلم / يعلم

I'm **learning (how) to play** the piano.

Mother **taught me (how) to cook**.

✍ **ever**: تستخدم في الأسئلة

Do you think e-books will **ever** replace traditional books completely?

✍ **had better + مصدر**: يجب أن (تستخدم للنصيحة)

You'd **better go** home now before the rain starts.

- ✍ **Teach / taught / taught:** يعلم My father **taught** me how to ride a bike.
- ✍ **accept:** يقبل He **accepted** an invitation to the opening-night party.
- ✍ **expect:** يتوقع He didn't **expect** to see me.
- ✍ **except:** ماعدا The museum is open daily **except** Monday.

- ✍ **sensible:** عاقل / حكيم Sara makes the right decision. She's a **sensible** woman.
- ✍ **sensitive:** حساس Sara is very sensitive. She wouldn't want to hurt anyone.
- ✍ **expect + مفعول + to + مصدر:** يتوقع We **expect to get** full marks in English.
- ✍ **expect + فاعل + will + مصدر:** يتوقع I expect he will get high marks.
- ✍ **expected + فاعل + would + مصدر:** يتوقع I expected he **would win** the race.

✍ الكلمات الآتية تستخدم كفعل وكاسم

- present هدية / يهدى / يهدى refuse قمامة / يرفض produce منتجات زراعية / يُنتج object هدف / شئ / يعترض  
increase يزيد / زيادة

## مراجعة القواعد بنظرة سريعة

### The present simple المضارع البسيط

يتكون الفعل في المضارع البسيط من المصدر - يضاف للفعل " es / s " للفعل عندما يكون الفاعل مفرد غائب

يستخدم للتعبير: الحقائق و العادات facts & habits

Always / usually / often / sometimes / rarely / never/ seldom / every / generally / daily .....etc

تأتي ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الرئيسي ولكنها تأتي بعد v. to be

he usually comes late

he is usually late

الظروف الآتية تقع في بداية الجملة أو في نهايتها :

Every day/in the morning/at moon/in the afternoon / in the evening / at night.

### The past simple الماضي البسيط

التكوين : يتكون الماضي البسيط من التصريف الثاني للفعل .

ويستخدم الماضي البسيط مع الكلمات الآتية :-السنة + in / Yesterday , last , ago , once in the past /

### Used to

اعتاد أن ( يفعل الشيء ولكنه لا يفعله الآن ) المصدر + used to + فاعل عاقل

يعتاد علي ( فعل شيء ) في الحاضر + be/get + used to + v + ing + فاعل عاقل

المصدر + be + used to + فاعل غير عاقل

+ be + used to + for + v + ing + فاعل غير عاقل تستعمل هذه التركيبية للتعبير عن الاستخدام

### Future Simple Tense زمن المستقبل البسيط

✍ يتكون المستقبل البسيط من will / shall + inf.

✍ يستخدم المستقبل البسيط مع الكلمات الآتية:

Next / in the future / soon / in a year, month, week tomorrow / this time tomorrow

- I'll see him tomorrow. - We will not (won't) meet again until next week.

✍ لاحظ استخدام المستقبل البسيط غالباً مع:

I expect / I'm sure / I think / probably / I hope / I believe / I feel sure / Perhaps

- I expect he will win the first prize. - I don't think she will get the job.

### Will + infinitive

✍ نستخدم will + infinitive

• For predictions: للتنبؤ

- I think you'll enjoy your holiday.

• For future facts: للحقائق المستقبلية

- I'll be 16 next week.

• For quick decisions: للقرارات السريعة

- That's the phone - I'll answer it.

• For offers: للعرض

- I'll go shopping with you if you like.

- for requests: للطلب - Will you give me your new address?
- for arrangements: للترتيب لعمل شيء - I'll see you this evening.
- for threats: للتهديد - I'll resign if I don't get a pay rise.

### Shall + infinitive

نستخدم shall + infinitive

- for suggestions: للاقتراح - Shall we go out for dinner tonight?
- for offers: للعرض - Shall I help you with your homework?

### Going to + infinitive

نستخدم going to + infinitive للتعبير عن الخطط والنوايا والقرارات قبل لحظة الحديث

- I'm going to make some coffee. Do you want some?
- نستخدم going to + infinitive للتنبؤ بحدث في المستقبل مع وجود دليل
- There are no clouds in the sky. It's going to be another sunny day.

### Present Continuous زمن المضارع المستمر

يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل بالنسبة للترتيبات والخطط المسبقة

- He's travelling to Cairo tomorrow. He's got his tickets.

### Present Simple زمن المضارع البسيط

يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل مع جداول المواعيد بوسائل المواصلات والمسرح والسينما والمدرسة.. الخ

- The plane takes off at 10 p.m.

- مع الروابط الآتية بشرط أن تتبع هذه الروابط بالمضارع البسيط / المضارع التام يأتي **will + inf**  
if / when / until / unless / after / as soon as / before

we will start as soon as he arrives / has arrived

### The future continuous المستقبل المستمر

#### Will – shall +be + v-ing

حدث سوف يكون مستمر في وقت معين في المستقبل

I will be doing my homework at 6 tomorrow.

### The future perfect المستقبل التام

#### Will have +p.p

حدث سوف يكتمل في خلال او قبل وقت معين في المستقبل

I will have done my homework by 6o'clock tomorrow.

### Conjunctions الروابط

**1-Although = though/even though (S + V)** بالرغم من (يأتي بعدهم جملة كاملة)

Although he's only 14,he's an expert at computers.

**2- Despite/in spite of ( noun/ gerund )** بالرغم من (يأتي بعدهم عبارة)

\* Despite his illness, he passed his exams.

**3-As well as = besides + in addition to ( noun/ gerund )** بالإضافة إلى

\* Besides cooking for 20 people, I did all the washing up.

**4-But =, however =, yet**

\* She drove fast, however she missed the plane. However fast she drove, she missed the plane

**5- Because = since = as (S + V)** لان (يأتي بعدهم جملة كاملة)

\* Because /since we are early, I think we should wait outside.

**6- Because of = owing to = due to ( noun/ gerund )** بسبب

\* Due to the bad weather, the match was cancelled.

**7- As long as = provided (that ) only if (S+V)** إذا /لو/ طالما (يأتي بعدهم جملة كاملة)

\* I'll go provided ( that ) ( as long as ) you come with me.

= I'll only go if you come with me. = I won't go unless you come with me.

**8- Not only + صيغة استفهامية + but + جملة كاملة + as well**

\* Not only have you got top marks but you've got a prize as well

**9- So as to = in order to = to + inf. لكي**

\* He opened the door in order to see who was there.

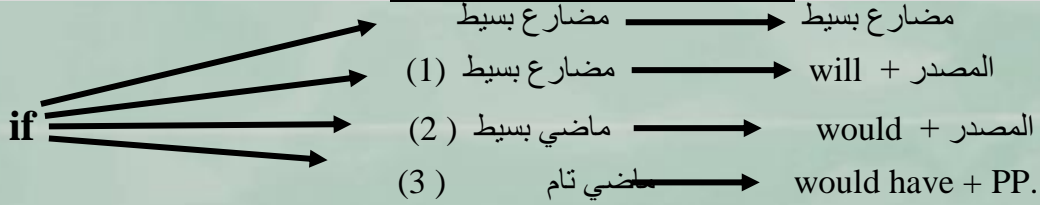
**10- So that = in order that (فاعل + can/may/could/might+ verb )**

\* He left early so that he could/ (might ) catch the train.

**11- So = therefore =that's why = - Consequently**

\* My bike's broken, so I'll have to walk. \*I missed the train, consequently I was late for school.

**Conditional Sentences**



**الحالة الشرطية الثانية**

**if + ماضي بسيط → would + المصدر**

تستخدم هذه الحالة للتعبير عن مواقف غير محتملة الحدوث أو مواقف خيالية أو غير حقيقية في الحاضر :

1- يحول المضارع إلي ماضي بسيط - يحول النفي إلي الإثبات و العكس .

نبدأ بالجملة الثانية . because / as -3- إذا احتوت الجملة علي

it isn't fine today . I can't go for a swim ( if ) If it were fine , I could go for a walk .

**الحالة الشرطية الثالثة**

1 - يحول الماضي البسيط إلي الماضي التام . - يحول النفي إلي الإثبات و العكس .  
**If + ماضي تام → would have + P.P**

- he didn't try to leave the country , so he wasn't arrested . ( if )

If he had tried to leave the country , he would have been arrested

1 - **يمكن استخدام should محل if في الحالة الأولى. ( should + s. + inf )**  
- if he fails his exam , he will be punished . ( should )

- Should he fail his exam , he will be punished .

**2- ويمكن استخدام were محل if في الحالة الثانية .**

**( were + s. + ..... ) – ( were + s. + to + inf )**

- if were a fish , I'd swim . - Were I a fish , I'd swim

- if he went to bed early , he wouldn't feel sleepy in the morning

Were he to go to bed early , he wouldn't feel sleepy in the morning

**3- ويمكن استخدام had محل if في الحالة الثالثة أو في الحالة الثانية إذا كانت فعل أساسي .**

if he had time ,he would go to the cinema . Had he time , he would go....

if you had studied , you would have succeeded. Had you studied , you ...

**و يمكن استخدام in case of محل if في الإثبات و لكن يأتي بعدها الاسم أو الفعل + ing**

if he were clever , he would solve this problem ( in case of )

In case of being clever ( his cleverness ) , he would .....

**- ويمكن استخدام ( but for- without ) محل if في النفي أو محل unless و يأتي بعدها الاسم أم الفعل + ing**

- if he hadn't behaved foolishly , we would have helped him

المصدر + would + اسم = if it weren't for + اسم المصدر + would + ..... اسم

without + اسم ... would have + p.p. = if it hadn't been for + اسم would've + p.p.

7- ويمكن استخدام **as long as** أو **that provided** أو **providing** محل **if** ولهم نفس المعنى .

### 10- The present perfect tense زمن المضارع التام

#### have / has + P.P.

- I have bought 'a new shirt .

**lately** تستخدم في النفي والاستفهام

**recently** تستخدم في الإثبات والاستفهام

**yet** تستخدم في النفي والاستفهام

**already** تستخدم في الإثبات والاستفهام

**ever** تستخدم في الاستفهام

**never** تستخدم في النفي

**since** تأتي مع تاريخ محدد

**For** تأتي مع مدة محددة

**have gone** يذهب لمكان ويظل هناك

**have been** يذهب لمكان ويعود

- She has learnt English since 1996.

- I haven't seen him lately.

- I have joined a music club recently

- I haven't met her yet

- I have already bought a new shirt.

- Have you ever been to America?

- I have never been to America.

- He hasn't met her since last week.

- He hasn't met her for a week.

- He has gone to Aswan = (he is still there)

- He has been to Aswan = (he came back)

لاحظ التحويلات التالية لأنها هامة جدا

- I last ate fish when I visited my uncle. → I haven't eaten fish since I visited my uncle

- I last ate fish was 3 weeks ago . → It's 3 weeks since I ate fish .

جملة ماضى بسيط + since + مدة زمنية + It's

- **Just /a moment ago**

- He left me a moment ago

- He has just left me.

### The Passive voice المبنى للمجهول

1. Simple present ( speak "s" ) مضارع بسيط	am / is / are + p.p. ( Spoken )
2. Present cont. ( is repairing ) مضارع مستمر	am / is / are being + p.p. ( repaired )
3. Simple past ( invited ) ماضى بسيط	was / were + p.p. (invited )
4. past cont. ( was watching ) ماضى مستمر	was / were being + p.p. ( watched )
5. Present perfect ( has paid ) مضارع تام	have / has been = p.p. ( paid )
6. Past perfect ( had picked ) ماضى تام	had been + p.p. ( picked )
7. Future simple ( will tell ) مستقبل بسيط	will be + pp). ( told )
8. Future perfect ( will have built )	will have been + p.p. ( built )
9. Going to ( going to invite me )	going to be + p.p. ( invited )
10. People say / believe / think / suppose / cam / allege he is genius. It is said that he is genius / He is said to be genius	

### 3- The past perfect tense زمن الماضي التام (had + P.P.)

When I got home, my mother had washed my clothes.

After, when, as soon as, , Till, until → ماضى تام → ماضى بسيط

Before / by the time → ماضى بسيط → ماضى تام

ماضى بسيط منفى ← Till / Until → ماضى تام

After / As soon as I had done my homework, I slept.

I had done my homework before/by the time I slept / I didn't sleep until I had me my homework.

No sooner

than

Hardly

+ had+ s. + p.p

when

+ s. + v.

ماضى بسيط

Scarcely

when

### B- The Past continuous tense زمن الماضي المستمر

Was / were + verb + ing

\*Between six and seven thin evening, I was having breakfast.

- I was having lunch when the phone rang.

**While – as - just as –when** → ماضى مستمر → ماضى بسيط (قاطع)/أو ماضى مستمر

While I was having lunch the telephone rang.

ماضي مستمر ← When → ماضي بسيط

I was having lunch when the telephone rang. The telephone rang while I was having lunch.

- While I was studying, my mother was cooking lunch  
( **While + V + Ing** ) ( Gerund) إذا لم يأتي فاعل بعدها يأتي

While having lunch my friend came

## 7- Relative clauses

**1- Who / that** (الذي/التي/الذين) تحل محل فاعل عاقل وهم بمعنى

He, she, they, I, you, we

This is the girl. She got high marks. This is the girl who / that got high marks.

**2- Who / whom** (الذي/التي/الذين) تحل محل مفعول عاقل وهم بمعنى

him, her, me, them, you, us

This is my friend. You met him on Friday. This is my friend whom you met on Friday.

**3- Which / That** (الذي/التي/الذين) تحل محل مفعول غير عاقل وهم بمعنى they, them, it

- I drive the car. It is expensive.

- I drive the car which / that is expensive^

**4- Whose** تحل محل ضمائر الملكية

's, his, her, your, our their, its ,my

I met Manal. Her father is a doctor.

I met Manal whose father is a doctor.

**5- Where** للمكان This is the school. I learnt in it. This is the school where I learnt.

**6- When** للزمان I met Tom. I was in England at that time. " I met Tom when I was in England

لو سبقت الأقواس بحرف جر نستخدم whom / which

I met my friends **with whom** I went to Alex.

تحل **Which** محل المكان لو اقترنت بحرف جر ولا نستخدم في هذه الحالة **where**

I went to the library in which I read books .

I went to the library where I read books .

لو كانت الجملة في المرحلة الثالثة من الصفات نستخدم **that** وكذلك لو سبقت الأقواس بكلمة **all**

## 9- Countable and uncountable nouns

**1- Countable nouns** - a book, an egg, a camel → books, eggs, camels -

**2- Uncountable nouns** light, news, behaviour, cloth, meat, soap, homework, petrol, music, advice, oil, food, information, luggage, bread, cake - time - experience, fish,

يجب حفظ الأسماء التي لا تعد حفظا جيدا مع ملاحظة أن الأسماء التي لا تعد تعامل معاملة المفرد حيث أنها لا تفرد ولا تجمع

1- هناك تعبيرات للكمية يجب معرفتها جيدا وهي كالتالي:

**some – a lot of – a few – a little**

**some – a lot of**

**a few**

مع اسم يعد

- في الجملة المثبتة نستخدم

تأتي مع الاسم الذي يعد والذي لا يعد

**a little**

مع اسم لا يعد

**any – many – much**

**any**

**many**

تأتي مع الاسم الذي يعد

**much**

- أما في الجملة المنفية والاستفهامية فإننا نستخدم

تأتي مع الاسم الذي يعد والذي لا يعد

تأتي مع الاسم الذي لا يعد

هناك تعبيرات للتجزئة يجب مراجعتها جيدا

a bit of/ a piece of cloth / a sheet of paper / a slice of meat/ a loaf of bread / a bottle of milk / a jar of jam / a tube of toothpaste / a bar of chocolate / a bar of soap

## If only = I wish = لو / أتمنى

- 1 - يأتي بعدهما ماضي بسيط للتعبير عن أمنية / الأسف لموقف في الوقت الحاضر .
- 2 - يأتي بعدهما ماضي تام للتعبير عن أمنية في الماضي / الأسف لموقف في الماضي .
- 3- يأتي بعدها مع would , I / we مع باقي الضمائر للتعبير عن أمنية في المستقبل .

## تحويل الجملة الخبرية من مباشر إلى غير مباشر

- 1 - يحول فعل القول بالآتي :- said - told / say to - tell / says to - tells / said - said
- 1 - تحذف الأقواس نربط بـ that ويمكن الاستغناء عنها . إذا كان فعل القول في الماضي تحول الأزمنة كالآتي : من المضارع الى الماضي و من الماضي البسيط الى الماضي التام او يبقى الماضي البسيط كما هو .

shall , will , can may , must

would , could , might must ( had to ) .

### تحويل السؤال من مباشر إلى غير مباشر

- 1 - يحول said / said to إلي / wondered / asked / wanted to know
- 2 - تحذف الأقواس إذا بدأ السؤال بأداة استفهام تستعمل كأداة ربط .
- 3 - إذا لم يبدأ السؤال بأداة استفهام تربط بـ if أو whether
- 4 - نقدم الفاعل علي الفعل لأننا نحول السؤال إلي جملة خبرية .
- 5 - تحول الضمائر و الأزمنة و الظروف كما سبق شرحه في الجملة الخبرية .

### تحويل الأمر من مباشر إلى غير مباشر

- 1 - يحول فعل القول said / said to إلي  
a) ordered / commanded    b) begged    c) asked / told    d) advised
- 2 - تحذف الأقواس    تربط بـ to في حالة الأمر المثبت و بـ not to بعد حذف don't في حلة النفي
- 3 - تحول الضمائر و الأزمنة و الظروف كما سبق شرحه في الجملة الخبرية . تحذف كلمة please إن وجدت .

### verbs that only take to + infinitive

Agree	يوافق	Manage	يتحكم	Mean	يعني- يقص
Demand	يطلب	Refuse	يرفض	Threaten	يهدد
Long	يشتاق	Attempt	يحاول	Dare	يجرؤء
Promise	يوعد	Expect	يتوقع	Hope	يأمل
Arrange	يرتب	Manage	يتحكم	Offer	يعرض
Deserve	يستحق	Decide	يقرر	Want	يريد
Learn	يتعلم	Pretend	يتظاهر	Wish	يتمني

### verbs that only take the gerund . ing + فعل

Enjoy	يستمتع	Delay	يؤجل	Suggest	يقترح
Prevent	يمنع	Practise	يمارس	Put off	يؤجل
Go no	يستمر	Miss	يفقد	Keep	يظل، يبقى
Mind	يمنع	Finish	ينته	Admit	يعترف
Avoid	يتجنب	Imagine	يتخيل	Recommend	يوصي
Give up	يتوقف عن	Deny	ينكر	Risk	يخطر
Fancy	يتخيل	Dislike	لا يحب - يكره	Come	يأتي

### verbs that the gerund or to + infinitive, with a change in meaning

أفعال يأتي بعدها الفعل + gerund /ing أو to و المصدر مع تغيير ( اختلاف ) في المعنى

Like	يحب	Love	يحب
Hate	يكره	prefer	يفضل

- إذا جاء بعد هذه الأفعال to و المصدر فأنها تشير إلي وقت معين اما اذا جاء بعدها v-ing فانها تعبر عن فكرة عامه :

☞ الأفعال الآتية يليها to + inf. / v. + ing مع وجود اختلاف في المعنى

- ☞ **remember + to + مصدر** : يتذكر أن يقوم بعمل شيء ما : **He remembered to see the man.**
- remember + v. + ing** : يقوم بعمل شيء ثم يتذكر أنه فعله : **He remembered seeing the man.**
- ☞ **forget + to + مصدر** : ينسى أن يفعل شيئاً : **Nadia forgot to meet the customer.**
- forget + v. + ing** : يفعل شيء ثم ينسى أنه فعله : **Nadia forgot meeting the customer.**
- ☞ **regret + to + مصدر** : يشعر بالأسف لأنه من الضروري أن يفعل شيئاً : **He regretted to say that my brother had an accident.**
- regret + v. + ing** : يشعر بالأسف لأنه فعل شيئاً : **He regretted saying that my brother had an accident.**
- ☞ **try + to + مصدر** : يحاول عمل شيء و غالباً لا ينجح : **He tried to climb the tree but he couldn't.**
- try + v. + ing** : يحاول عمل شيء و غالباً ينجح / يقوم بعمل شيء ليرى نتيجه : **He tried climbing the tree and he did it.**
- ☞ **stop + to + مصدر** : يتوقف لكي يفعل شيئاً : **He stopped to read his paper.**
- stop + v. + ing** : يتوقف عن عمل شيء : **He stopped reading his paper.**



**1- Present necessity الضرورة في المضارع**  
**Must / have to / have got = it's necessary for .....to**

1- it's necessary for me to get up early ( must ) I must get up early

**2- Present unnecessary : عدم الضرورة في المضارع**  
**don't have to / don't need to / needn't = it isn't necessary for ..... to .....**

ليس من الضروري أن تفعل الشيء و لكن يمكن أن تفعل إذا أردت

1- it isn't necessary for you to write to him , I have already telephoned him ( needn't )  
 You needn't write to him, I have already telephoned him.

**3- Prohibition : التحريم / الخطر**  
**mustn't = be + not allowed to و تعنى أنه لن يسمح لك بفعل الشيء**

- You mustn't wait her ( allowed ) You aren't allowed to wait here.  
 - It's forbidden to park your car here ( mustn't )

**4- Past necessity : الضرورة في الماضي**  
**had to = it was necessary for ..... to .....**

- it was necessary for us to travel to Paris yesterday ( we )  
 We had to travel to Paris yesterday.

**5- past Unnecessity : عدم الضرورة في الماضي**  
**didn't have to = didn't need to = it wasn't necessary for ..... to**

تستخدم في الماضي وتعني أنه ليس من الضروري لذلك لم يفعله

\* needn't have + P.p = it wasn't necessary for ..... to

تستخدم في الماضي وتعني أن الشخص فعل الشيء رغم أنه كان غير ضروري و لكن فعله .

- I bought a new camera and that was unnecessary ( needn't )

**6- Advisability النصح**  
**should / ought to = it's advisable to/ it is a good thing to**

من الصواب / أو المنصوح به أن تفعل الشيء .

**should / ought to + have + P.P في الماضي**

يستخدم في الماضي وتعني أنه كان من الواجب عليك أن تفعل الشيء الصواب و لكنك لم تفعله .

**May / might + inf = Perhaps ..... will ...../ it's possible ..... will ....**

تعبّر عن إمكانية حدوث الشيء في المستقبل .

**may / might + have + P.P =it is possible ... past S... =perhaps ... past S.....**

تعبّر عن إمكانية أو احتمال حدوث الشيء في الماضي

تستعمل للتعبير عن القدرة علي فعل شيء في الحاضر أو المستقبل

**can = am / is / are + able to**

**Could = was / were + able to**

تستخدم لتعبّر أنه استطاع أن يفعل الشيء و لكن بصعوبة .

## **General Exercises**

### **Choose the correct answer**

1. We should spend the money (*on – at – with – for*) **something that will benefit everyone.**
2. How long did you spend (*at – in – on – with*) **your homework?**
3. Children spend too much time (*watching – to watch – watched – watches*) **TV.**
4. The Internet has become part of (*every day – each day – another day – everyday*) **life.**
5. Nobody is going to hand you success on a **plate**, (*do they – is he – are they – aren't they*)?
6. The college's aim is to help students (*achieving–achieved–to achieving–achieve*) **their aspirations.**
7. A number of **priceless** (*workings -works–work–worked*) **of art were stolen from the gallery.**
8. It's a waste of time (*read – to reading – reading – of reading*) **this silly book.**
9. We are really (*looking – making – giving – taking*) **forward to seeing you again.**
10. Let's start (*of – with – at – by*) **reviewing what we did last week.**
11. I'd like to start (*of – with – at – by*) **some lemon juice.**
12. This ceremony marks the 50<sup>th</sup> (*memory–souvenir–anniversary–memorial*) **of the end of war.**
13. As he aged, his (*memory – souvenir - anniversary – memorial*) **got worse.**
14. The building was in need of (*form – repair – reform – inform*).
15. The government encourages all parties to play a role in the (*reform – repair – recreate – reinvent*) **process.**
16. Lack of money will have a **negative** (*defect–affect- effect – infect*) **on our research programme.**
17. It was a shock to (*invent - discover – develop – rely*) **the truth about his horrible past.**
18. If you go (*out – in – down – on*) **like this, you'll end up in prison.**
19. People feel that (*experimenting –extending–experiencing–expanding*) **on animals is wrong.**
20. I was shocked (*of hearing – hearing – to hear – heard*) **that he had resigned.**
21. He **failed the test** as (*expect – expecting – to be expected – expected*).
22. The decision was based (*on – in – with – at*) **rational thought.**
23. This corporation is based (*on – in – with – at*) **London.**
24. He was treated as a (*champion - hero – title – character*) **on his release from prison.**
25. My cousin is a **boxing** (*title – leader – champion - hero*).
26. (*Alike – Unlike – Look like – Liking*) **most systems, this one is very easy to install.**
27. I'll be with you now. There are a (*double – pair – couple – two*) **of things I have to do first.**
28. The committee contains representatives from both the public and (*ordinary–natural - private –normal*) **sectors.**
29. (*Why – when – How – What*) **she did was an abuse of her position as manager.**
30. Being tall gave him an **advantage over** (*the other – another – others – otherwise*) **players.**
31. We are always arguing with each (*another – the other – others – other*) **about money.**
32. Early warnings of rising water levels prevented (*the others -another – other –others*) **major catastrophe.**
33. The study showed a deep fear among (*old–older–the elderly–elderly*) **of being abandoned to the care of strangers.**
34. He's a friend of my (*father - father's – fathers – fathers'*).
35. He was driving at **50 miles** (*the – a – some – an*) **hour.**
36. It is difficult to find (*job – profession - work – position*) **in the present economic climate.**
37. He's been out of a (*job – work – profession – career*) **for six months now.**
38. He gained **valuable** (*experiences–experiments–expenses–experience*) **during the project.**
39. We are trying to get the baby into a (*custom -routine–red tape–tradition*) **for sleeping.**
40. People wonder who will (*beat– earn– win–defend*) **in the coming presidential elections.**
41. The plane crashed **killing all 157 passengers on** (*aboard – broad – abroad – board*).
42. I think I'll have a **cold drink** (*another - rather – worse – less*) **than coffee.**
43. She travelled (*on – in – by – at*) **boat.**
44. House prices went up (*by – for – with – at*) **20%.**
45. He prefers to be in the **background and** (*cause–persuade–recommend–let*) **his assistant talk to the press.**

46. It is almost 2 metres (*at – with - in – by*) **height**.
47. This food smells (*terribly – wonderfully – awfully – bad*).
48. He used to be (*shame–ashamed–shy–shameful*), **but now he's gone to the opposite extreme**.
49. I'm having trouble (*finding – founding–existing–being*) **anything new to say on this subject**.
50. The problem only (*finds – founds – exists – brings*) **in your head, Jane**.
51. Their marriage was (*existed - founded – found – being*) **on love and mutual respect**.
52. This drink doesn't (*consist - contain – belong – has*) **any alcohol**.
53. The tour (*contained – consisted - included – brought*) **a visit to the Science Museum**.
54. The committee (*consists – includes – contains – has*) **of ten members**.
55. I had a nice evening **in the** (*accompany– organisation–corporation – company*) **of friends**.
56. It was thoughtful (*for – of – from – with*) **you to bring me such lovely flowers**.
57. Why don't you just admit defeat and let someone (*other – another - else – also*) **try?**
58. I was (*wandering - wondering – saying – talking*) **whether you'd like to come to a party**.
59. It can be (*quiet – quit – quietly – quite*) **cold here in winter**.
60. First (*contact - connect – communicate – compact*) **the printer to the computer**.
61. I will (*contact - connect – communicate – compact*) **you later to advise you when to come**.
62. Climate change is still very much a subject for (*saying – talking – debate – telling*).
63. The children grew up in a/an (*weather - atmosphere – air – drought*) **of violence and insecurity**.
64. (*Forget – Remember - Remind – Demand*) **me to phone Alan before I go out**.
65. I definitely remember (*to send –to sending–sent –sending*) **the letter. It was three days ago**.
66. As far as I can (*remind – remember – forget – regret*), **this is the third time we've met**.
67. My problems seem insignificant (*complained –remembered–contained –compared*) **with other people's**.
68. He used his wife's birthday as a /an (*excuse–order–complaint–sadness*) **for not going to the meeting**.
69. After her mother's death, Sara clung to her aunt more than (*never – so – such – ever*).
70. The closure of the factory will lead to a number of job (*loose – loses – losses – bosses*).
71. The earth is (*eliminated – dominated – irritated – illuminated*) **by the sun**.
72. The trunk of this tree is two metres in (*kilometer – diameter – commuter – circular*).
73. All I (*recognize – identify – know – do*) **is that she used to work in a bank**.
74. You can (*know - recognize – wonder – inquire*) **the fish by the shape of their fins**.
75. The meal (*was paid – was charged - cost – took*) **us about 40 pounds**.
76. I'd rather (*use – to use – using – used*) **my money than leave it lying in the bank**.
77. Do you mind if I use your computer? –Well, I'd rather you (*don't –can't–didn't–might not*).
78. The instructions were (*other - rather – another – quiet*) **complicated**.
79. It's time you (*are cleaning – clean – cleaned – to clean*) **your room**.
80. He was in London publicizing his new (*biography –autobiography - photography - geography*) **of Shakespeare**.
81. (*On – At - - With – In*) **the end, we all decided to go back home**.
82. (*On – At - - With – In*) **the end of the day, he felt exhausted**.
83. She earns a (*respected – respectable – respecting – respectful*) **salary**.
84. We were brought up to be (*respected – respectable - respectful – respecting*) **of authority**.
85. His parents agreed to pay the rent for his flat but otherwise left him to (*offend–defend–find–fend*) **for himself**.
86. The referee whistled for a (*fall – file – foul – fault*).
87. Why should I say sorry when it's not my (*foul – fault – fail – fell*)?
88. We seek to improve (*relations–relationships–relatives –relates*) **between our two countries**.
89. She has a very close (*relation – communication - relationship – deviation*) **with her sister**.
90. Nothing will make me (*to change – changing - change – changed*) **my mind**.
91. I watched the car until it was out of (*seeing – sights – sites – sight*).
92. We're going to Paris for the weekend to see the (*sides – sights – sight – slides*).
93. It is compulsory for all motorcyclists to (*dress – put on - wear – get dressed*) **helmets**.
94. (*Wear – Dress – Put – Get dressed*) **your shoes on. We're going out**.
95. She (*put - dressed – wore – was putting*) **the children in their best clothes**.

96. Unemployment is a major *(reason – purpose - cause – suggestion)* of poverty.
97. You've got to appear *(calm – calmly – calmness – to calm)* in an interview.
98. She was seen *(ran – runs - running – run)* away from the scene of the crime.
99. My cousin went *(blind – blinding – blindness – to blind)* when he was ten years old.
100. We *(do – are doing–have done– to do)* sell stamps, but we haven't got any at the moment.
101. The exercises are designed to*(weaken–molten–deepen–strengthen)* your stomach muscles.
102. Mothers are often who *(provide–divide–invade– invite)* emotional support for the family.
103. My brother *(joined –enrolled – entered – exited)* on a public relations course at the AUC.
104. You *(may – might –need -have to)* do well academically to get into medical school..
105. Children *(must –shall –are going– may)* learn socially acceptable behaviour. That's really important.
106. I don't need that. You can *(have – refuse – throw – waste)* it away.
107. I saw a TV *(amnesty – ambiguity – amenity - celebrity)* at my friend's party yesterday.
108. They *(faced – forced – afforded – fended)* him to sign the documents.
109. I asked him whether he *(has done – does - had done – doing)* it all himself.
110. Parents encourage their children to be *(conventional–common–confusing– conscientious).*
111. My friend asked me what I *(did–was doing–had been doing–have done)* since we last met.
112. It was a fatal accident *(which – in which – that – whose)* several people were killed.
113. My partners and I meet *(regularly –totally–gradually– slowly)* to discuss the progress of the project.
114. The gate is open. He *(must forget–must have forgotten–can't have forgotten–can have forgotten)* to shut it.
115. She needed to break out her daily*(habit–custom–way–routine)*and do something exciting.
116. Enough energy *(produces – are produced–is produced–producing)* by this system to heat thousands of homes.
117. You don't sound very *(enthusiastic – interested – active – keen)* about the idea.
118. The *(glass – film - screen – front)* will display the username in the top right-hand corner.
119. By next year, the project will *(have been completed–be completing–completed–completes).*
120. You can *(do – download – write – downfall)* these files from the internet.
121. The doctors acted quickly *(although – because – so – despite)* the girl's life was saved.
122. Her eyes were shinning with *(procession – excitement – imprisonment – attachment).*
123. On *(he arrived – arrived – arriving – arrives)* home I discovered they had gone.
124. She *(thinks – believes – regards – looks)* him as the best tennis player.
125. Have you heard? They've discovered a/an *(effective–useless– cruel – hopeless)* drug against cancer.
126. Galileo's ideas were well in advance of the age *(that – which – what - in which)* he lived.
127. We promise *(delivering - to deliver – deliver – delivered)* the goods within 48 hours.
128. An inquiry was set up to determine the *(reason – cause – purpose – component)* of the accident.
129. I wish I *(don't eat – haven't eaten – hadn't eaten – can't eat)* so much. I feel very ill.
130. He *(must have–may have–might have–can't have)* committed that crime. I'm sure he didn't.
131. In Egypt, people who are 16 or older have to carry *(an individual–a personal–an identity–an effective)* card.
132. Three hundred pounds *(are - is – have been – were)* too much for this pair of shoes.
133. We need a new political leader *(which–when–that–whose)* breadth of vision can persuade others to change.
134. Their music blends *(traditional –national – historical – contemporary)* and modern styles.
135. How do people *(regret – have fun - celebrate – develop)* the end of the year in Japan?
136. Everything went exactly as *(plan – planned – planning – to plan).*
137. We are planning *(to spend – spending – spent – spends)* the weekend in Aswan.
138. Who is this letter from? I don't *(see – look - recognize – suspect)* the writing.
139. Many local people *(object–can't stand–argue–disagree)* to the building of the new airport.
140. He was exhausted as he *(is working–has been working–had been working–working)* all day.
141. This singer earns a huge *(number – amount – dollars – pounds)* of money.



142. Teamwork is required in order to (*win – get – make – achieve*) our aims.
143. I wish I (*know – have known – knew – am knowing*) where I put my glasses.
144. I'd like to get a job in the teaching (*job – career – profession – occupation*).
145. We'll have to hurry. The match (*is starting – starts – started – was starting*) in half an hour.
146. Home accidents may (*take part – find – occur – plan*) when children are left alone.
147. (*If – Unless – When – As*) you weren't always in a hurry, your work would be much better.
148. He told them they would be killed (*if – provided – unless – when*) they cooperated.
149. They (*would have been – are – were – had been*) here by now if they'd caught the early train.
150. He has (*made – acted – done – brought*) extensive research into renewable energy sources.
151. Somebody was (*hitting – beating – knocking – smashing*) on the window.
152. You promised me you (*will – can – are – would*) be home early tonight.
153. The company is well (*positioned – explored – raised – put*) to compete in foreign markets.
154. I didn't see her this morning. She (*can't leave – must leave – must have left – can't have left*) before I woke up.
155. Globalization is a (*sight – response – phenomenon – action*) of the 21st century.
156. I'll send you the file you need as an e-mail (*post – letter – part – attachment*).
157. It's only human (*life – nature – conflict – will*) to be worried about change.
158. Don't worry. I'm sure everything (*will be – will have been – is going to – may be*) fine.
159. In his later life he suffered periods of (*amnesia – anemia – ameba – bacteria*). He could remember nothing.
160. She is (*guilty – suspect – innocent – hero*). The police mistook her for someone else.
161. It (*is expecting – is to expect – is expected – has expected*) that space holidays will be more common.
162. After hours of questioning, the (*innocent – suspect – wrong – mistake*) confessed.
163. The book was written in a (*style – frame – phenomenon – description*) appropriate to the age of children.
164. He (*is – will be – has been – had been*) in the army for 30 years. He is a colonel now.
165. When I was younger, I (*usually – always – used to – often*) take exercise every day.
166. Solar power is a type of (*new – waste – cheap – renewable*) energy.
167. They have been seen together on two separate (*chances – occasions – opportunities – time*).
168. I've got hardly (*a – some – the – any*) money.
169. The goods were (*examined – accepted – expected – looked*) for damage on arrival.
170. The twins are so (*unlike – like – look like – alike*) that I can't tell which is which.
171. One hundred and sixty eight hours (*have – is – are – were*) equal to one week.
172. It doesn't take (*many – some – lot – much*) time to change the law.
173. He (*will plant – is planting – is going to plant – would plant*) some trees in the garden. This is his plan.
174. What's the (*distance – area – space – district*) between New York City and Boston?
175. Children must (*intend – send – go – attend*) school between the ages of 5 and 16.
176. This effective drug has no (*clear effects – intentional effects – side effects – good effects*).
177. Teachers (*prove – protect – provide – prevent*) a model for children to imitate.
178. They're good (*employers – employees – unemployed – employment*). They treat the people work for them well.
179. Nothing on earth will (*try – make – let – persuade*) me to lend her the money.
180. She's (*effective – fluent – persuasive – intensive*) in French and German. She also speaks a little Italian.
181. She is very (*patient – persuasive – ambitious – sociable*). She enjoys spending time with others.
182. By the end of next week, all the goods (*delivered – will deliver – will have been delivered – to be delivered*).
183. (*Because – Although – But – however*) he wasn't formally trained as an art historian, he is widely respected for his knowledge of the period.
184. England is one of the few countries (*when – which – where – whom*) people drive on the left.
185. The game was called off (*because of – Despite – so – therefore*) bad weather.

186. Her mother, in (*who – that – which – whom*) she confided, said she would support her unconditionally.
187. We need three (*abroad – aboard – cardboard – on board*) boxes to store these clothes.
188. (*Conditional – Constitutional – Conventional – conversational*) power stations are those which use oil or coal as fuel, rather than nuclear power.
189. He wishes he (*told – could tell – would tell – had told*) them the truth about their son. If he had done so, the situation would have been quite different.
190. Where would be the best (*proof – position – division – distinction*) for the lights?
191. The article presents a new scientific (*suggestion – search – theory – process*) to explain changes in the climate.
192. I couldn't (*know – find – search – recognize*) her because she had changed a lot.
193. He would like to (*specialize – develop – appreciate – generalize*) in heart surgery.
194. If she put on a heavy coat, she (*won't feel – wouldn't feel – wouldn't have felt – would have felt*) cold.
195. I don't know how he went, but I think he (*must have taken – might have taken – must take – can't take*) the train.
196. It was John Baird who (*invent – has invented – invented – was invented*) TV.
197. They arrived 10 minutes late. The play (*has started – had started – started – was starting*) 5 minutes earlier.
198. I thought he was (*shameful – ambitious – shy – conscientious*), but I discovered he was not interested in the topic.
199. How (*many – much – little – few*) oil do you need? Two bottles, please.
200. The company is going to (*launch – leak – break – see*) a new product on to the market.

**Find the mistake in each of the following sentences:**

- 1- I think that there is wrong something with your car engine.
- 2- The number of people out of work has raised sharply.
- 3- The book arose my interest.
- 4- He doesn't earn as much like me.
- 5- The furniture in the bedroom is really tasty.
- 6- The basic design of the car is very same to that of earlier models.
- 7- I bought the similar car as yours.
- 8- It is regretful that the police were not informed sooner,
- 9- He attended a serious of lectures on William Shakespeare.
- 10- I didn't tell him anything expect that I needed the money.
- 11- She's decided not to agree the job.
- 12- Ideas on childcare may various considerably.
- 13- We had to queue down for an hour for bread.
- 14- Today the teacher learnt us how to use the new software.
- 15- After much argument, the judges finally decided given the prize to the 18-year old pianist.
- 16- It is not a good idea to miss meals and place them with snacks.
- 17- He received an award to bravery from the police service.
- 18- My cousin trained being an accountant.
- 19- Interested, hundreds of people have applied for the job.
- 20- I tried the dress on but it didn't feet.
- 21- He has an overview next week for the manager's job.
- 22- The minimum salary for workers was set at £3.20 an hour.
- 23- It was a remarkable achievement for so a young player.
- 24- Many people inject to experimentation on animals.
- 25- The bird resorted its nest. It built another one somewhere else.
- 26- My teachers expected me winning the poetry competition.
- 27- I don't know weather our team will win the game or not.



- 28-When she was 10 years old, she bit by a scorpion.
- 29-She went to the college to get some aspirin.
- 30-Despite he is over 70, he's very energetic.
- 31-I wish I can speak Italian.
- 32-All the flights to Acapulco already book.
- 33-We should rewrite glass instead of throwing it away.
- 34-When President Nasser died, thousands of people attended his birthday.
- 35-It's the house who's door is painted red.
- 36-She was good at physics despite the fact that she found it bored.
- 37-Eugene O'Neill was one of the most famous American playwrights.
- 38-He's lost a lot of weight. He needs to go on a diet.
- 39-I said my brother whether he had seen the movie before.
- 40-He is a diabolic. He shouldn't eat sweet food.
- 41-I want to make a cake. Have we got a flour?
- 42-If I were in charge, I would have done things differently.
- 43-People can waste money by recycling paper and glass.
- 44-The Karnak temple is a very important ancient Egyptian manuscript.
- 45-Nurses belong to the medical depression.
- 46-He wasn't on the train. He must have took the bus.
- 47-Water freezes at 0° and boil at 100°.
- 48-He joined this firm 5 years ago today, so he works here for exactly 5 years.
- 49-The Grapes of Wrath wrote by John Steinbeck.
- 50-I need more money, so I've made a decision. I work overtime.
- 51-The Married Double *is a short story by Franz Kafka.*
- 52-Ice is the liquid form of water.
- 53-To remove viruses from your computer, an antivirus programme must use.
- 54- How much times have I told you not to play football in the garden?
- 55-Fixing the late in my washing machine cost me 200 pounds.
- 56-If you don't know how using the coffee machine, ask your mother.
- 57-The car was much more expensive than we expected.
- 58-My parents warned me to not walk alone at night.
- 59-Scientists believe that by 2030, a cure will have found for AIDS.
- 60-We haven't been telling about the possible side effects of this drug.
- 61-The hotel is convenient situated close to the beach.
- 62-He was banished to Australia, which he died five years later.
- 63-She's an artist which work I really admire.
- 64-I wish there is something I could do to help her.
- 65-If only they stop making that noise.
- 66- How of earth are they going to conduct their investigation?
- 67-He can't have been ill. He couldn't even walk.
- 68-I asked her what had she been doing since we last met.
- 69-All that driving has taken me a headache.
- 70-Everyone takes the right to good medical care regardless of their ability to pay.
- 71-My brother likes his job so much. He is working for the same employer for 10 years.
- 72-We are having more space if we knock down the wall between the two rooms.
- 73-If you want to attract more customers, trying advertising in the local paper.
- 74-I wish I can visit my grandparents, but I am not feeling well.
- 75-I wish I didn't say that to him. He was really upset.
- 76-I hope going to college next year.
- 77-I regret to listen to that boring woman. She only wasted my time.

- 78-We regret informing you that the course is full.
- 79-Have you arranged meeting him?
- 80-The kids offered doing the dishes
- 81-Be quiet! He hasn't finished spoken.
- 82-If you drop an apple, it is falling.
- 83-He was in the army since he was 20 and he hasn't retired yet.
- 84-She is used to water the garden herself, but now she doesn't have the time.
- 85-Twenty degrees are a relatively low temperature.
- 86-The kids are at a school until 3.30.
- 87-The police has arrested her in connection with the robbery.
- 88-Nuclear physics are the area of physics which deals with atoms and with nuclear energy.
- 89-Her parents died while she is still at school.
- 90-Although his cries, no one came to his assistance.
- 91-I thought he was honest because he turned out to be a thief.
- 92-Groups of unemployed people from marched in decision to the capital.
- 93-Housework has rationally been regarded as women's work.
- 94-She is a careers adviser that job is to give people advice and information about jobs.
- 95-She performed all her duties conscience.
- 96-This job involves driving a long district every day.
- 97-The first step in search is data collection.
- 98-The piano is my favourite musical monument.
- 99-How many petrol do you need to fill your car?
- 100- People who regally commit crimes and are not sorry for what they do must be hanged.

## و الآن مع أسئلة الورك بوك

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

### **Reviews:**

#### **(A)**

1. Millions of people watched the rocket ..... on TV.  
a- start                      b- launch                      c- set off d- beginning
2. The medicine I'm taking is wonderful. It has no side .....  
a- results                      b- damage                      c- effects d- problems
3. My brother and I are not twins, but we are very .....  
a- alike                      b- same                      c- like                      d- correct
4. Coal and oil are two kinds of fossil .....  
a- petrol                      b- gas                      c- energy                      d- fuels
5. Electricity is produced in a/an ..... station.  
a- bus                      b- railway                      c- power                      d- energy
6. I expect ..... you at the weekend.  
a- I'm going to see                      b- I'll see                      c- I'm seeing                      d- is going to start
7. The film ..... at 7.30 this evening.  
a- starts                      b- will start                      c- started                      d- I see
8. How ..... times have you seen that film?  
a- many                      b- much                      c- lots                      d- different
9. The distance from here to Cairo ..... two kilometres.  
a- are                      b- has been                      c- is                      d- is being
10. In some places, wood ..... to heat people's homes.  
a- are burnt                      b- burns                      c- burnt                      d- is burnt



**(B)**

1. When I was at school I won a poetry writing ..... .  
a- race                      b- article                      c- competition                      d- game
2. She sent me the report as an e-mail ..... .  
a- attachment                      b- letter                      c- picture                      d- article
3. The little girl does not want to sing because she is ..... .  
a- innocent                      b- secret                      c- spy                      d- shy
4. My favourite musical ..... is the piano.  
a- player                      b- instrument                      c- tool                      d- equipment
5. The cover of my book is made of ..... .  
a- glass                      b- rubber                      c- cardboard                      d- wood
6. We arrived half an hour late. The film ..... half an hour earlier.  
a- began                      b- was beginning                      c- had begun                      d- has begun
7. Agatha Christie's books ..... into more than 40 languages.  
a- have been translated                      b- have translated  
c- translated                      d- were being translated
8. The Romans ..... Petra nearly two thousand years ago.  
a- have captured                      b- were captured                      c- captured                      d- had captured
9. Your train leaves in ten minutes. If you hurry, you ..... it.  
a- catch                      b- will catch                      c- would catch                      d- are catching
10. If I am thirsty, ..... water.  
a- I will drink                      b- I would drink                      c- I am drinking                      d- I drank

**(C)**

1. Too much sun can be ..... .  
a- respectable                      b- harmful                      c- unthinkable                      d- in conflict
2. We ..... on the door three times, but they did not hear us.  
a- visited                      b- called                      c- hit                      d- knocked
3. Nurses are part of the medical ..... .  
a- profession                      b- work                      c- job                      d- career
4. I get on well with all my ..... at work, but they are not close friends.  
a- people                      b- workers                      c- colleagues                      d- relatives
5. The accident ..... at eight o'clock when everyone was on their way to work.  
a- occurred                      b- took                      c- came                      d- caused
6. They ..... left two hours ago, so they arrived by now. It is not far.  
a- must                      b- must have                      c- have                      d- can't have
7. No one is sure where Ali is, but we think he ..... gone to see his uncle.  
a- must                      b- can't have                      c- might have                      d- must have
8. She asked me whether ..... there before.  
a- I had been                      b- I went                      c- I go                      d- had I been
9. If ..... for too long, I get a headache.  
a- I'll read                      b- I read                      c- I had read                      d- I would read
10. If you had come ten minutes later, I ..... .  
a- would leave                      b- will leave                      c- leave                      d- would have left

**(D)**

1. I'm sorry, I didn't ..... you. You look completely different.  
a- see                      b- recognise    c- realise                      d- position
2. Most secondary school teachers ..... in one or two subjects.  
a- specialise                      b- work                      c- achieve    d- concentrate
3. Experiments are used to test scientific ..... .  
a- thoughts                      b- processes                      c- models                      d- theories
4. We're ..... my brother's birthday next weekend.  
a- enjoying                      b- remembering                      c- celebrating    d- developing
5. My favourite ..... when I play football is goalkeeper.  
a- place                      b- point                      c- location                      d- position
6. I wish I ..... what I was doing at the weekend.  
a- know                      b- have known                      c- knew                      d- was knowing
7. My sister wishes she ..... harder when she was at school.  
a- had worked    b- worked                      c- works                      d- has worked
8. The children were covered in sand when they got home. They ..... on the beach.  
a- were playing    b- have been playing    c- played    d- had been playing
9. By the time we arrived home, we ..... over 500 kilometres.  
a- travelled    b- had travelled    c- have travelled                      d- are travelling
10. I expect ..... my driving test when I take it next year.  
a- pass                      b- to pass                      c- passing                      d- to passing

**(E)**

1. My parents have always ..... me to keep fit by playing sports.  
a- warned                      b- agreed                      c- encouraged                      d- argued
2. When you pass your test, you'll get a driving ..... .  
a- permission    b- licence                      c- paper                      d- certificate
3. He does not want to live a ..... life. He would prefer excitement and adventure.  
a- conventional    b- daily                      c- interesting                      d- exciting
4. Their television ..... is very dirty.  
a- window                      b- glass                      c- gadget                      d- screen
5. .... books used to be very cheap.  
a- Paper                      b- Paperback                      c- Cardboard                      d- Hard
6. Florence Nightingale, ..... was born in Italy, went to school in England.  
a- which                      b- where                      c- that                      d- who
7. My uncle went to a school in London, ..... he learned to speak English well.  
a- which                      b- where                      c- who                      d- that
8. I went to the bank this morning ..... I needed to take out some money.  
a- so                      b- although    c- because                      d- and
9. I've felt really tired today, ..... I went to bed early last night.  
a- because                      b- so    c- despite                      d- although
10. I hope that by the end of next week, our roof will have been ..... .  
a- repair    b- repairing                      c- repaired                      d- repairs

**(F)**

1. My cousin is very ..... . She loves meeting and talking to new people.  
a- well-organised                      b- conscientious                      c- sociable    d- ambitious
2. People understand what I'm saying when I speak Spanish, but I'm not ..... .

- a- fluent          b- ideal          c- mature          d- qualified*
- 3. The girl tried to ..... me to lend her my phone, but I refused.**  
*a- treat          b- enroll          c- provide          d- persuade*
- 4. One of the supermarkets in our town has 25 ..... .**  
*a- employers          b- employees          c- applicants          d- merchants*
- 5. The school ..... every student with books, so you don't have to buy any yourself.**  
*a- gives          b- trains          c- provides          d- lends*
- 6. Aisha's parents asked her ..... she had finished her homework.**  
*a- weather          b- where          c- if          d- to*
- 7. My friend's parents have invited me ..... on holiday with them next year.**  
*a- for          b- go          c- going          d- to go*
- 8. Ali's doctor advised ..... to stay at home if he was feeling ill.**  
*a- he          b- him          c- it          d- his*
- 9. If it isn't too hot tomorrow, I ..... go swimming.**  
*a- should          b- must          c- can't          d- might*
- 10. They ..... be at school by eight o'clock every day. School starts at eight.**  
*a- have to          b- should          c- might          d- can*

### Practical Tests

#### PT:(1)

- 1. This medicine is safe. There are no ..... .**  
*a) top effects          b) side effects          c) leaks          d) waste*
- 2. I'm going to have lunch with friends tomorrow. We are ..... at the restaurant. at 12.30.**  
*a) going to meet          b) would meet          c) will meet          d) meet*
- 3. The ..... between Cairo and my town is 650 kilometres.**  
*a) district          b) area          c) distance          d) space*
- 4. It is hard to walk in space because there is no ..... .**  
*a) gravity          b) waiting          c) spin          d) air*
- 5. In Britain children ..... secondary school from the age of 11.**  
*a) go          b) Intend          c) share          d) attend*
- 6. Most furniture ..... from wood.**  
*a) made          b) is made          c) make          d) makes*
- 7. Many people ..... vegetables in their gardens.**  
*a) growing          b) are grown          c) grow          d) is grown*
- 8. In very hot weather, ice cream turns to ..... .**  
*a) water          b) soft          c) liquid          d) solid*
- 9. We call oil and coal ..... fuels.**  
*a) fossil          b) old          c) renewable          d) waste*
- 10. She ..... an archaeologist when she leaves university. That is her plan.**  
*a) become          b) will become          c) am becoming          d) is going to become*
- 11. He is flying to London at the weekend. His flight .....at 5.30 in the morning.**  
*a) leaving          b) leaves          c) left          d) leave*
- 12. We don't have ..... time. We'll have to hurry.**  
*a) many          b) some          c) lot          d) much*
- 13. My friend and I look very different, but our personalities are ..... .**  
*a) alike          b) same          c) common          d) like*

14. Six months ..... half a year.

- a) are                      b) is                      c) be                      d) am

15. The walls of the ..... were built to protect the town.

- a) pyramid                      b) mission                      c) castle                      d) house

16. I am writing ..... that my teacher asked for.

- a) essay                      b) a essay                      c) the essay                      d) that essay

**(2)**

1. I expect I ..... you at the weekend.

- a- am going to see                      b- am seeing                      c- I'll see                      d- see

2. After the accident, the doctor ..... her to check she was not injured.

- a- examined                      b- looked at                      c- tested                      d- studied

3. Do you have ..... free time this afternoon?

- a- a                      b- the                      c- many                      d- any

4. We went to the opening of a new school last week. It was a very interesting .....

- a- occasion                      b- time                      c- view                      d- situation

5. Petrol ..... from oil.

- a- made                      b- is made                      c- makes                      d- are made

6. Wind and wave power are typos of ..... energy.

- a- new                      b- waste                      c- renewable                      d- cheap

7. When I was younger, I ..... go swimming every day.

- a- usually                      b- used                      c- use                      d- used to

8. My sister ..... at university for three years. She comes home every weekend.

- a- is                      b- has been                      c- is being                      d- had been

9. The police think he did it. He is the main .....

- a- suspect                      b- pioneer                      c- publisher                      d- agent

10. I really enjoy reading Agatha Christie novels. I particularly like her .....

- a- way                      b- style                      c- system                      d- design

11. It ..... that air travel will become more popular in the future.

- a- is thought                      b- was thought                      c- thought                      d- thinks

12. He did nothing wrong. He's .....

- a- suspect                      b- guilty                      c- innocent                      d- sensible

13. If he doesn't get eight hours sleep every night, he .....really tired the next day.

- a- will feel                      b- feels                      c- would feel                      d- is feeling

14. If I have any free time tomorrow, ..... for a walk in the park.

- a- I went                      b- I go                      c- I'd go                      d- I'll go

15. The piano is our favourite musical .....

- a- tool                      b- instrument                      c- equipment                      d- device

16. Her uncle can't remember his accident. The doctor thinks he may have ... .

- a- a headache                      b- phobia                      c- amnesia                      d- injury

**(3)**

1. Don't worry. I'm sure ..... them again soon.

- a- you see                      b- you're seeing                      c- you'll see                      d- you're going to see

2. Wanting friends is part of human .....

- a- nature                      b- conflict                      c- will                      d- life

3. They have just received this photo as an e-mail .....

- a- post                      b- attachment                      c- letter                      d- part

4. Lightning is a dangerous but natural .....

- a- sight                      b- response                      c- eclipse                      d- phenomenon

5. She didn't see her brother this morning. He ..... the flat very early.  
a- must have left b- must leave c- can't have left d- can't leave
6. He left his glasses at school yesterday. I'm hoping someone ..... found them.  
a- must have b- might have c- can't have d- can have
7. The quickest way for Sawsan to get to school is to ..... a train.  
a- go b- bring c- come d- take
8. That plant has been ..... so that it gets lots of light.  
a- explored b- raised c- positioned d- put
9. Taha's mother asked him where .....  
a- he had been b- had he been c- has he been d- he has been
10. She promised she ..... me as soon as the plane landed.  
a- will phone b- phoned c- would phone d- phones
11. Is that someone ..... on our door? I'll see who it is.  
a- hitting b- knocking c- smashing d- beating
12. Their uncle is a scientist. He's ..... research into new forms of energy.  
a- making b- taking c- getting d- doing
13. If you ..... earlier, you wouldn't have missed your train.  
a- had left b- leave c- would have left d- left
14. .... you work harder, you'll fail your exam.  
a- If b- Unless c- When d- As
15. I'm hot today. How about ..... to the beach?  
a- gone b- going c- went d- go
16. Accidents ..... more frequently when the roads are busy.  
a- take part b- come in c- cause d- occur

**(4)**

1. You'll have to hurry. Your lesson ..... in half an hour.  
a) is going to start b) starts c) will start d) start
2. That tower is one of the towns most famous .....  
a) landmarks b) marks c) events d) products
3. I'd like to get a job in the medical .....  
a) work b) career c) occupation d) profession
4. I wish I ..... where I left my jacket.  
a) know b) had known c) knew d) could know
5. Heba wishes she ..... all her money at the weekend.  
a) didn't spend b) doesn't spend c) hasn't spent d) hadn't spent
6. My brother ..... his ambition when he became a doctor.  
a) achieved b) won c) got d) made
7. After the storm, there was a huge ..... of water on the roads.  
a) floods b) number c) amount d) lot
8. Sara felt ill all night because she ..... too much the day before.  
a) had eaten b) was eating c) eats d) has eaten
9. Hamdi was very tired yesterday evening because he ..... for a school test all day.  
a) has revised b) had been revising c) revised d) revising
10. I really ..... to very loud music in public places.  
a) disagree b) argue c) can't stand d) object
11. Ali's friends didn't ...him when he returned from abroad. He looked so different.  
a) recognize b) remember c) see d) look

12. My friend suggested ..... for a picnic in the park.  
 a) go                                      b) to go                                      c) going                                      d) goes
13. We're planning ..... to Europe for our holiday next year.  
 a) flying    b) to fly                                      c) fly                                      d) to flying
14. In some countries, people ..... the end of the year on December 31st.  
 a) enjoy                                      b) celebrate                                      c) have fun                                      d) party
15. In our town, there are musicians who play ..... music.  
 a) tradition                                      b) national                                      c) folk                                      d) historical
16. Whose ..... is it to make sure children arrive safely at school?  
 a) responsible    b) responsibility    c) response    d) respond

**(5)**

1. Five pounds ..... a lot for a cup of coffee.  
 a) are                                      b) cost                                      c) pay                                      d) is
2. In some countries, people use a passport instead of ..... card.  
 a) an identity    b) a personal    c) a national    d) an individual
3. Sayed ..... the train. He was at the station half an hour before the train left.  
 a) can't miss                                      b) can't have missed  
 c) must have missed                                      d) didn't miss
4. My friend advised me to see a doctor. I wish I ..... her advice now.  
 a) took                                      b) take                                      c) had taken    d) have taken
5. Did they ever discover the ..... of the fire?  
 a) reason                                      b) purpose                                      c) explanation    d) cause
6. My sister promised ..... me after school this afternoon.  
 a) meeting                                      b) to meet                                      c) met                                      d) meet
7. I've just finished a novel ..... the main character is an 80-year-old man.  
 a) which                                      b) in which                                      c) who                                      d) whose
8. Have you heard? They've discovered a/an ..... new treatment for flu.  
 a) effective                                      b) useless                                      c) real                                      d) cruel
9. She ..... sport as a very important part of her life.  
 a) thinks                                      b) believes                                      c) regards                                      d) looks
10. On ..... that he had passed his driving test, Taha was very happy.  
 a) heard                                      b) he heard                                      c) to hear                                      d) hearing
11. There was great ..... when our team won the football match.  
 a) procession    b) imprisonment    c) excitement    d) attachment
12. He wasn't getting enough exercise ..... he joined a sports club.  
 a) because                                      b) although                                      c) and                                      d) so
13. I've seen an interesting article on the internet which I have ... onto my computer.  
 a) received                                      b) done                                      c) downloaded    d) written
14. By this time next week, the exam results will .....  
 a) have been published                                      b) have published  
 c) publish                                      d) be publishing
15. I like that photograph on your computer .....  
 a) glass                                      b) screen                                      c) film                                      d) front
16. Nader is really ..... about all kinds of sport. He loves playing and watching it.  
 a) interested    b) active                                      c) enthusiastic    d) keen

**(6)**

1. In some modern homes, water ..... by energy from the sun.  
a) are heated    b) heat    c) is heated    d) is heating
2. My daily ..... starts when my alarm clock goes off at 6.30.  
a) routine    b) habit    c) custom    d) way
3. There's water all over the floor. Someone ..... to turn off the shower.  
a) must forget    b) must have forgotten  
c) can't have forgotten    d) can have forgotten
4. Her parents ..... have meetings with the teachers at her school.  
a) totally    b) gradually    c) slowly    d) regularly
5. My brother and I have just had a conversation .... we discussed our holiday plans  
a) which    b) in which    c) what    d) to which
6. At the weekend, my aunt asked me what I ..... since we last met.  
a) did    b) was doing    c) have done    d) had been doing
7. Teachers are always encouraging their students to be ..... and hard-working.  
a) conventional    b) common    c) confusing    d) conscientious
8. He wanted to know whether anyone ..... the book he was reading.  
a) had I seen    b) has seen    c) sees    d) saw
9. My sister hasn't finished her course yet. She's still .....  
a) a trainer    b) an employee    c) an employer    d) a trainee
10. The best writers force their readers ..... about serious questions.  
a) to think    b) thinking    c) thought    d) think
11. A new supermarket in our town was opened by a well-known ..... yesterday.  
a) celebrity    b) famous    c) character    d) somebody
12. I think someone may have ..... today's newspaper by mistake.  
a) wasted    b) thrown    c) refused    d) thrown away
13. I really ..... phone my parents to tell them I'm going to be late home today.  
a) need    b) must    c) can    d) could
14. At her first school, she ..... to wear a blue uniform.  
a) had    b) must    c) could    d) has
15. He is thinking of ..... on a Business Studies course at the local college.  
a) entering    b) applying    c) enrolling    d) beginning
16. Pupils don't have to pay for their books. The school ..... them.  
a) pays    b) provides    c) takes    d) affords

**3) Choose the correct answer from a ,b ,c or d**

السودان 2011

- 1-The moon has less.....than the earth so you could jump much higher there  
a) power    b) energy    c) gravity    d) strength
- 2-.....he understand the lesson if be read the summary.  
a) Will    b) Did    c) Can    d) would
- 3- The prisoner of Zenda..... in the nineteenth -century .  
a) took part    b) took run    c) took place    d) took form
- 4- Ali ..... travelling by sea  
a) used to    b) using to    c) is used to    d) uses to
- 5- Modern ..... are the tall tower which are built where there is a lot of wind.  
a) waste    b) wind turbine    c) fossil    d) hydroelectric
- 6- How ..... information have you got from the story?  
a) many    b) much    c) lots    d) different
- 7- This mice story ..... By Taha Hussein

- a) is written      b) writes      c) wrote      d) was written
- 8- Yehia Haqqi graduated in law and worked for time as a .....**  
a) lawyer   b) diplomat   c) sailor      d) journalist
- 9- It's a month ..... Hand last visited her uncle.**  
a) for      b) since      c) of      d) to
- 10- The .... are the parts of trees that grow under the ground and find water.**  
a) branch      b) bark      c) rings      d) roots
- 11- He will catch the train ..... coming in time.**  
a) if      b) in case of      c) unless      d) in spite of
- 12- The cover of the book is made of .....**  
a) rubber   b) glass      c) wood      d) cardboard
- 13- The teacher asked Ahmed .....all the way on foot**  
a) if he came      b) if did he come      c) would he come      d) if does he come
- 14- ..... makes light shine on something.**  
a) Grass      b) Cliff      c) Illuminate      d) Carve
- 15- They left two ago, so they.....arrived by now. It's not far.**  
a) must      b) must have      c) can't have      d) have
- 16- He did nothing wrong. He's .....**  
a) suspect      b) guilty      c) innocent      d) sensible

**Find the mistakes in each of the following sentences:**

**Units:**

**(1)**

1. Five litres of petrol are enough for me to get to work.
2. My five-year-old sister will start a school in September.
3. The police is going to get new uniforms.
4. Fifty degrees are a very high temperature.
5. Athletics were my father's favourite sport.

**(2)**

1. Twenty million people saw the new film already.
2. My parents use to live in a small flat in the city centre.
3. Yesterday evening, we revised for our English test when all the lights went out.
4. Our school was opening exactly 25 years ago today.
5. She played the piano since the age of six and she still plays every day.

**(3)**

1. If you leave now, you catch your train.
2. Water will freeze if the temperature is zero or below.
3. If you throw that stone, you break a window.
4. If she trains hard, she wins next week's race.
5. If you'll mix red and white, you get pink.

**(4)**

1. I wish the school holidays are longer.
2. If only I haven't forgotten where I put my mobile phone.
3. I'm really tired this morning. I wish I had sleep more last night.
4. Ali wishes he can come to your party, but he's not feeling well.
5. I wish I didn't lent her my dictionary. She's taken it home with her.



**(5)**

1. He hopes winning a prize for his school work to win.
2. I regret to go to the cinema. It was not a very good film.
3. She offered taking me to the station in her car.
4. We've just finished to watch a TV programme about Egyptian history.
5. We've arranged picking my brother up from the airport.
6. Their teacher agreed helping them find an English pen friend.

**Reviews:****(A)**

1. I've decided that I am doing more exercise in the future.
2. It's a really good film. I'm sure you enjoy it.
3. Thirty kilometres are a long way to walk in hot weather
4. Millions of cars produce by Japanese companies every year
5. In many countries, children take the right to go to school until the age of 16.
6. Electricity is produced in energy stations.

**(B)**

1. My father loves his job. He worked for the same company for 20 years.
2. When I was younger, I use to want to be a pilot.
3. If you kick the ball too hard, you break that window.
4. The Mousetrap written by Agatha Christie.
5. Travelling by plane sometimes makes me a headache.
6. The street where I live is only three metres width.

**(C)**

1. I'm not sure how well I did in the test at school today, but I think I might pass.
2. You can't have been very thirsty. There's no orange juice left in the bottle.
3. I asked him where had he been all morning.
4. If it had been too hot, we wouldn't go to the beach.
5. What about go shopping this afternoon?
6. How in earth is it possible to irrigate the desert?

**(D)**

1. It was nearly midnight by the time he has finished his homework last night.
2. She is very hungry when the rescue team found her. She had eaten nothing for nearly three days.
3. If only they write more quickly.
4. I wish there is something I could do to keep fit.
5. She has decided studying medicine when she goes to university.
6. My sister suggested to go to the zoo at the weekend.

**(E)**

1. Queen Victoria, who husband Albert died in 1861, lived until 1901.
2. The town which I was born is in the northeast of the country.
3. Mustafa was happy despite he came third in the race.
4. On hear the good news, Eman phoned her parents.
5. We won't be tell the results of the test until the day after tomorrow.
6. Scientists believe that by 2020, a replacement for oil will have found.

**(F)**

1. My friend asked me if had I enjoyed reading the book she had lent me.
2. Parents often warn their children to not cross the road without looking.
3. I don't expect them arriving yet. They're often late.
4. You can buying clothes in some supermarkets now.
5. If you couldn't see what you want in a shop, you should ask an assistant.
6. You must to remember to post this letter. It's very important.

**Practical Tests****PT:(1)**

1. She's going meet her sister in town.
2. I fixed the lake in the petrol tank.
3. How many time do I need to drive to the city centre?
4. Oil and gas are find under the ground.
5. Water is the solid form of ice .
6. The married team went to Italy on their honeymoon.

**(2)**

1. I need to get fit, so I've made a decision. I do more exercise.
2. "The Prisoner of Zenda" was wrote by Anthony Hope.
3. We moved to this house two years ago today, so we lived here for exactly two years.
4. Before I entered the university, I had to show my credit card.
5. If you heat water, it melts.
6. Ra'fat EI-Haggan and Goma'a EI-Shawwan were very famous Egyptian kings.

**(3)**

1. Let's try to find them. They can't have went very far.
2. Teachers and supervisors belong to the teaching confession.
3. He asked me if saw his newspaper.
4. The statue of Ramses is a very important Ancient Egyptian magnet.
5. People can waste lots of money by using the underground.
6. The accident wouldn't happen if he hadn't been using his mobile phone.

**(4)**

1. I want to make some sandwiches. Have we got a bread?
2. Soha shouldn't eat too many sweets because she is chronic.
3. I asked my mother whether had she seen my English book.
4. Sylvia is on a low-fat diet because recently she's lost a lot of weight.
5. She has always enjoyed to go to the theatre.
6. Alfred Farag is a famous Egyptian playwright.

**(5)**

1. When I have nothing to do, I feel really boring.
2. The person who's job is to clean the school is not here today. He's ill.
3. When Umm Kalthoum died, thousands of people attended her wedding.
4. You should reinvent paper, rather than throw it away.
5. Some people believe that in the future, water will use as a fuel for cars.
6. Despite he is 68, my grandfather is still working.

**(6)**

1. I wish I can read more quickly.
2. She asked her friend weather she had finished her homework.
3. My parents have invited one of my friends stay for the weekend.
4. When Wagdy was five years old, he was sting by a scorpion.
5. I need to go to the university to buy some medicine.
6. A civil servant is someone who works for the army.

**2011** (السودان)

- 1- All scientists are interested of space.
- 2- My brother had a good educated. He to one of the best university .
- 3- Despite she is clever , Mona fell in the final exam.
- 4-1 went to the university to buy some medicine.
- 5- Before you go to London, you should practice to speak English.
- 6- My father is a good tennis playing.

***With My Best Wishes***

***MR. Ayman M. Ebrahim***

***ELmahalla Secondary School For Boys***

# Comprehension

كيف تتعامل مع قطعة الفهم :

ليس هناك مادة علمية معينة يمكن الاعتماد عليها للتعامل مع قطع الفهم ولكن الممارسة والتدريب المكثف - ناهيك عن الثروة اللغوية - هم أفضل الوسائل وأنجحها للتمكن من هذا السؤال وإجافته واضعين في الاعتبار التالي:

☞ اقرأ الأسئلة الواردة على القطعة وهذا يبين لك ما تدور حوله القطعة ويحدد لك المعلومات التي ستبحث عنها لاحقاً.

☞ اقرأ القطعة و لا تنزعج ولا تشغل بالك كثيراً بالمفردات أو الجمل الصعبة والغير واضحة الواردة في القطعة.

فالمفردات الصعبة واردة لا محالة ..... وما يلزمك هو فهم المعنى العام وتطويع المفردات حسب موضوع القطعة لأن الكلمة يتغير معناها حسب السياق الواردة فيه .مع استخدام القدرة على التخمين.

☞ وقد تجد إيضاح لكلمة صعبة واردة في قطعة ما في العبارة التالية لها فمثلاً فقد وردت لفظة "the namaste" وهي لفظة صعبة ومعناها التصافح باليد في امتحان 2003 مرحلة أولى تبعها الإيضاح التالي:

"placing your two palms together with fingers pointed upwards"

والمهارة هنا معرفة المعنى العام دون التوقف عند لفظ بعينه.

☞ وتنقسم أسئلة القطعة العادية **comprehension** إلى نوعين:

- الأول** : س و ج وهنا يمكنك أن تكتب الإجابة بأسلوب القطعة أو أسلوبك الخاص أو الجمع بينهما .
- الثاني** : هو سؤال الاختياري وهنا عليك أن تكتب الإجابة المختارة فقط وتتطلب الإجابة هنا مهارة عالية في الفهم والتركيز
- رجاء** قبل اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة تأكد أن الاختيارات الأخرى غير صحيحة بالمرّة".
- ☞ تمهل في استخلاص الإجابة من القطعة فقد تكون إجابة السؤال الأول في الفقرة الثانية وليس شرطاً أن تكون في الفقرة الأولى.
- ☞ اكتب الإجابة الصحيحة فقط ولا تزيد لأن الزيادات المبالغ فيها والغير مطلوبة تقلل من الدرجة التي يضعها المصحح.
- ☞ التزم بالبناء السليم للجمل من حيث الزمن والضمان وغيره
- ☞ افصل كل إجابة عن الأخرى بوضع خط بالقلم الرصاص
- ☞ تأني في فهم السؤال ولا تتعجل وتذكر أن فهم السؤال يعادل نصف الإجابة.
- ☞ راعي القواعد العامة في الكتابة من علامات ترقيم وخلافه واجتهد في تحسين الخط.
- ☞ واعلم أن قطعتي الفهم تمثلان خمس درجة الامتحان.
- و خذ بالك من جدول الاسئلة التي جاي ده

1- Put a suitable title for the passage.	ضع عنوان مناسب للقطعة.
2- What is the main idea of the passage ?	ماهي الفكرة الرئيسية في القطعة؟
3- Find in the passage words which mean a).....b).....	استخرج كلمات من القطعة تعنى..
4- What does the pronoun.....refer to?	مالذي يشير اليه الضمير.....؟
5-What does the underlined / black typed word ...mean ?	مادا تعنى الكلمة أسفلها خط ؟
7-Summarize the main idea in the passage	لخص الفكرة الرئيسية في القطعة
8-Show...(Indicate...) Explain ... / Discuss the reasons.....	وضح- اشرح - ناقش السبب
9-Write down = Summarize ...with words on your own.	اكتب.... لخص بكلمات من عندك
10-Explain why/ What do you think ( is your opinion)of..?	فسر لماذا / مارأيك في.....؟
11- Do you agree \ oppose \ think .....	هل تعتقد ( موافق ) ( تعترض ) ؟
12- Mention in detail ...../ in brief.....	أذكر بالتفصيل...../ بأختصار....
13- From your point of view..... / from your opinion.....	من وجهة نظرك ( في رأيك).....
14- From the point of view of the writer(author=narrator)	من وجهة نظر الكاتب (المؤلف) ..

## نماذج لقطع الفهم

### **Read the passage then answer the following questions:-**

(1)- People may be divided into two types: winners and losers. Because our families and friends have a great influence on us as we grow, we are born helpless and dependent on our environment. Winners are able to change their situation and become independent by being responsible for their own lies. They don't blame others for their mistakes. They do their own thinking, they listen to others, evaluate what they say, and then they make up their minds. Although they may fail at times, yet they keep self-confidence. Winners overcome their bad experiences. They enjoy work, play, food and the world of nature. They freely enjoy themselves but they can postpone it if duty calls. Losers, on the other hand never learn to take responsibility for their own lives. There are many causes why people can become losers: disease, poor nutrition, cruelty, unhappy relationships and bad experiences. These can interfere with the normal progress towards becoming a winner. But whereas winners fight these situations, losers hang on to them, and use them as excuses. Losers usually feel anxious, unhappy and bored. They are afraid to try new things and often repeat their own mistakes again and again. Losers spend their lives waiting for something wonderful to happen to save them from their problems with their lives but never try to change .

#### **A) Answer the following questions :**

- 1- What determines the life of the winners ?
- 2- What does the underlined word ( these ) refer to ?
- 3- Give a suitable title to the passage ?
- 4- Find in the text words which mean : a) to put off until a later time b) to get in the way of

#### **B) Choose the correct answer :**

##### **5- When winners fail at times, they -----**

- a) are afraid to try new things
- b) never keep their self – confidence
- c) spend their time waiting
- d) never repeat their own mistakes

##### **6- Losers are people who -----**

- a) blame others for their mistakes
- b) overcome their bad experiences
- c) learn to take responsibility
- d) try to change

##### **7- Winners can change their own lives by -----**

- a) blaming others for their mistakes
- b) using their mistakes as excuses
- c) waiting for something wonderful
- d) being responsible for their own lives

losers	خاسرون	Influence	تأثير	blame	يلوم
evaluate	يقيم - يقدر	self-confidence	بالنفس ثقة	postpone	يؤجل
nutrition	تغذية	Cruelty	قسوة	relationships	علاقات

(2) Did you think of money? Is it important to us or not? Aristotle, the Greek philosopher, summed up the four chief qualities of money some 2000 years ago. It must be lasting and easy to recognize, to divide, and to carry. This means it must be, “durable, distinct, divisible and portable? “. When we think of money today, we picture it either as round, flat pieces of metal, which we call coins or as printed paper notes. But there are still parts of the world today where coins and notes are of no use .They will buy nothing, and a traveller might starve if he had none of the particular local “ money “ to exchange for food . Among isolated people, who are not often reached by traders from outside commerce usually means barter. This is a direct exchange for pots, baskets, or other manufactured goods. For this kind of trading, money is not needed, but there is often something that everyone wants and everybody can use, such as salt to flavour food, shells for ornaments, or iron and copper to make into tools and vessels. These things: Salt, shells or metals are still used as money in some primitive parts of the world today.

**A) Answer the following questions :**

- 1- Which of the four qualities of money, do you think, is the most essential?
- 2- How would you describe money at present?
- 3- What does the underlined word (barter) mean?
- 4- Give a suitable title for the passage?

**B) Choose the correct answer :**

**5- In some isolated parts of the world money is -----**

- a) needed for trading                      b) not needed for trading  
c) needed for buying thing              d) wanted as coins or paper notes

**6- In some parts of the world today where coins and notes are of no use we can -----**

- a) exchange goods                      b) use local money only  
c) use any other money              d) buy nothing

**7- According to the passage, everyone in the isolated parts needs -----**

- a) only salt to flavour food              b) iron and copper to make into tools  
c) salt , shells , iron and copper      d) tools and vessels

Philosopher	فيلسوف	durable	متين	distinct	متميز
divisible	للقسمة قابل	portable	للحمل قابل	Isolated	منعزل
grain	(ذرة)حبوب	Manufactured	مصنع	ornaments	تحف - حلى

(3) One day, I was standing outside an underground station in London waiting for a friend, when I saw two men. One was sitting on the pavement. His clothes were old and dirty and had a hat in front of him. As people passed by , he said, “ Can you give me some change, please ? “ A few people tossed some coins into the hat but mist people ignored him.

The other man was wearing a suit and holding plastic petrol can. He stopped people and told them his car had run out of petrol and he had forgotten his wallet. He asked them to lend him some money for petrol. Most people happily gave him money. Some gave him coins, but most gave him notes. I watched him for ten minutes. In that time he collected a lot of money. He put it in his pocket, but he did no go to the petrol station. It became clear to me that both men were beggars. The one in the dirty clothes needed money more than one in the suit. But the one in the suit was much more successful. Isn't that strange?

**A) Answer the following questions :**

- 1- Why was the writer standing outside the station?
- 2- Which man collected the most money?
- 3- Did the man in the suit really have a car which had run out of petrol?
- 4- What does the pronoun “it “in bold refer to?

**B) Choose the correct answer :**

**5- “Most people ignored him “means people -----**

- a) shouted at him                      b) refused to give any money  
c) walked past without looking at him      d) moved quickly

**6- People ----- the second man's story.**

- a) didn't believe                      b) believed                      c) doubted                      d) knew

**7- The man in the suit asked people to ----- him money.**

- a) take                      b) borrow                      c) spend                      d) lend

pavement	رصيف	toss	يقذف	Change	المفكة
ignore	يتجاهل	beggar	شحات	dirty	قذر

(4) The neighbours closest to my house are my favourite people. The man is a retired army officer and his wife still working for the nearby university. They are very hospitable and usually invite their friends to lunch. It is particularly enjoyable to wake up a Friday morning to the sounds of their music playing which are really quite artistic. However, I also love to hear them laughing when they make a mistake in their music playing. Besides music, carpentry is still man's main interest, and most days he is outside in his work space in the garden, making an artistic piece of furniture.

My neighbours are ideal to live next door, too, because they can very helpful if I need them. I respect them as they never interfere in my private life and I behave with them in the same way. We have helped each other with numerous emergencies such as fire and car accidents. We also co-operate with each other in little ways such as bringing the mail, when one of us is away. We sometimes meet when they invite me over for coffee, with some of their friends who are usually very interesting people: poets, painters, professors and other lively persons whom I enjoy meeting. Sometimes we go to the fireworks display. Apart from this, we simply live next door to each other peacefully, side by side.

**A) Answer the following questions :**

- 1- Give one reason why the writer likes his neighbours.
- 2- What hobbies do the writer's neighbours practice?
- 3- Why does the write respect his neighbours?
- 4- Why the writer's are neighbours ideal?

**B) Choose the correct answer :**

- 5- **The underlined word "usually" means -----**  
 a) always                      b) never                      c) seldom                      d) many times
- 6- **At the neighbours' house, the write meets -----**  
 a) interesting people                      b) uninteresting people  
 c) soldiers and artists only                      d) officers and professors only
- 7- **The underlined words "little ways" refer to -----**  
 a) short roads                      b) not long streets  
 c) personal business                      d) simple services offered

Retired	متقاعد	Hospitable	مضيف	Artistic	فنى
Carpentry	نجارة	Ideal	مثالى	Private	خاص

(5) Amal and Hassan, a newly married couple, were poor. Hassan's wage enough to rent only a very small flat. But there were two things of which each was proud ! Amal had the longest and most beautiful hair and Hassan possessed a magnificent gold pocket-watch, given to him by his father. Amal always noticed sadly, when he looked at this watch fixed to the buttonhole of his coat by a common old leather strap. He really needed a gold chain. Hassan often thought if only he could buy her a jeweled comb to hold her long hair in place. Now, it was the feast, Hassan and Amal began to think what present they could afford to give each other. Amal had a wonderful idea. She ran down the street to the shop with the notice : " Hair bought " . She entered and an hour later walked out of the shop richer by five hundred dollar but without her hair. She bought a chain to suit Hassan's watch and wrapped it in a piece of coloured paper. When Hassan saw her hair, he was speechless. Amal cried, "It will grow again very quickly". I had to sell it buy your present. She produced the parcel from behind her back. Opening it laughed until tears came into his eyes. He had sold his watch to buy a jeweled comb for her hair. Amal smiled and said. "Ours are the best feast presents in the world ".

**A) Answer the following questions :**

- 1- Show that Hassan and Amal led a hard life?
- 2- What did Amal's sacrifice show?
- 3- Why was Hassan deeply moved?
- 4- Give a title to the passage.

**B) Choose the correct answer :**

**5- Amal sold her hair ----- the feast.**

- a) exactly on      b) one day before      c) two days      d) one day after

**6- When Hassan saw Amal without her long hair he felt -----**

- a) happy      b) angry      c) shocked      d) ashamed

**7- The underlined word " It " refers to -----**

- a) Hassan's watch      b) Amal's hair      c) the feast      d) the chain

couple	زوج	Possess	يمتلك	Magnificent	رائع
Pocket-watch	جيب ساعة	Buttonhole	زرار عروة	strap	رباط - طوق
chain	سلسلة	Feast	عيد	wrap	يلف
comb	مشط	parcel	لفة	presents	هدايا

(6) It was the end of the summer holiday and Nadia was worried. She had still not done her homework. Nadia had missed the day of school because she had been ill . She had phoned her friend Azza and asked what homework their teacher had set for the summer holiday. Azza had told her that teacher had asked them to write a composition. Nadia had written down the title. It was "The best things in life are three "

Nadia didn't know what to write. When she thought about the best things in life, they didn't seem to be " three " at all . She thought about her parents. There were two of them. Her brothers and sisters, there were four of them. She thought about happiness, love, nature. She couldn't count these at all. On the first day school, Nadia's teacher asked her to read her composition to the class. Nadia stood up and began. "I don't think the best things in life are three at all, "she said. " I think they are things you can't count "The other students stated to laugh. " Nadia "said her teacher gently. " The title of the composition was: The best things in life are free. "

**A) Answer the following questions :**

- 1- Why wasn't Nadia at school when the teacher set the homework?
- 2- Why did the rest of the class laugh when Nadia started to read her composition?
- 3- What does the word "It "in the first paragraph refers to?
- 4- Do you agree that the best things in life are free? Why?

**B) Choose the correct answer :**

**5- Nadia communicated with Azza by -----**

- a) phone      b) letter      c) e-mail      d) message

**6- Nadia's teacher was ----- with Nadia.**

- a) happy      b) pleased      c) angry      d) worried

**7- Nadia disagreed with the title of the composition because -----**

- a) She wrote it down wrongly
- b) She couldn't count the best things in life
- c) She didn't want to write the composition
- d) She didn't have time to write the composition.

Composition	فقرة	Nature	الطبيعة	free	مجانى
-------------	------	--------	---------	------	-------



(7) Your goal is something that you want to do. First you should decide what that goal is. Do you want to pass an exam? Do you want to be a doctor? Do you want to be wealthy? Think about what you want and decide on your goal. You should write your goal on a piece of paper. Put your goal poster on your wall and look at it everyday. Then decide what you have to do to achieve your goal. Some people never reach their goal because they think it is impossible. You should think positively. Don't think "the exam is difficult and I will probably fail it," instead you should think "The exam is difficult, but I have worked hard and will pass it ". People who think negatively seldom reach their goals, so be positive! We are most successful at things we enjoy. So you should try to enjoy your work. Look at your goal poster. Think how happy you will be when you have reached your goal. Think about that happiness while you are working and you will enjoy your work.

**A) Answer the following questions :**

- 1- What is a goal ?
- 2- What does the underlined word (it) refer to?
- 3- How can you learn to enjoy your work?
- 4- Do you agree with the advice of the writer?

**B) Choose the correct answer :**

**5- The best title for the passage is -----**

- |                                 |                                  |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| a) How to be a doctor           | b) Three ways to reach your goal |
| c) The best way to pass an exam | d) How to make a goal poster     |

**6- "You should think positively "mean that you should "-----**

- a) realize that it is difficult to reach your goal
- b) work harder
- c) be confident and optimistic
- d) learn to take responsibility

**7- The opposite of positive is -----**

- |             |               |             |               |
|-------------|---------------|-------------|---------------|
| a) negative | b) responsive | c) relative | d) possessive |
|-------------|---------------|-------------|---------------|

positively	بإيجابية	negatively	بسلبية	Seldom	نادرا
------------	----------	------------	--------	--------	-------

(8) Scientists believe that there is a number of reasons for climatic changes. One reason could be the changes in the amount of heat which actually comes from the sun at different times. Another could be volcanic dust. People have also been adding gases such as carbon dioxide to the atmosphere. These are called greenhouses because they hang in the atmosphere around the Earth like the roof and walls of a greenhouse. The Earth receives heat and light from the sun sends this back into space as infrared radiation. Much of this radiation cannot pass through the greenhouse gases and this causes increased temperatures near the Earth.

The amount of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere is increasing mainly because all countries burn fossil fuels such as oil, natural gas and coal. The destruction of the big rain forests, which absorb carbon dioxide and give out oxygen, makes matters worse.

What can be done to prevent this situation? Global warming is a problem that affects every country and every person in the world. First of all, all governments must agree to stop the destruction of the world's rain forests. Secondly, they must agree to reduce the amount of carbon dioxide that transport and industries emit into the atmosphere. And we can all play a part as individuals. We should all try to reduce the amount of carbon dioxide we emit into the atmosphere. This can be done by driving fuel- efficient cars. The best way people can help is to use public transport as much as possible instead of their cars. And finally, we should plant more trees in the cities and on farms to give us back the air we need.

**A) Answer the following questions :**

- 1- What are the reasons for climatic changes?
- 2- What does the underlined word this refers to?
- 3- Why does the amount of carbon dioxide increase in the atmosphere?
- 4- Give a title to the passage?

**B) Choose the correct answer :**

**5- If the amount of carbon dioxide doubles, the average temperature will -----**

- a) decrease      b) reduce      c) increase      d) raise

**6- To help, people can use -----**

- a) their private cars      b) their old buses      c) private cars and bicycles      d) public transport

**7- Trees are important because they -----**

- a) take in oxygen and produce carbon dioxide  
 b) absorb infrared radiation  
 c) absorb carbon dioxide  
 d) take in carbon dioxide and emit oxygen

Climatic	مناخى	volcanic	بركانى	hang	يتعلق
Atmosphere	الجوى الغلاف	Radiation	إشعاع	fossil fuel	عضوى وقود
absorb	يمتص	destruction	تدمير	public transport	العام النقل

(9) You have got some things that are complicated and you don't know much about them. Your tongue is about 10 centimeters long. It is covered with taste buds. These are tiny nerve endings, which enable you to taste your food. Babies are born with taste buds all over their mouths. These gradually disappear as they grow older leaving only those on the tongue. An adult has about 1.000 taste buds. We can taste our food when saliva, a liquid produced by the mouth, dissolves chemicals in the food and washes them over taste buds. There are four basic tastes: Sweet, sour, salt and bitter. All the taste buds can detect all these tastes to some extent, but different areas of the tongue detect different tastes best.

Sweet tastes such as sugar, are best detected by the taste buds at the tip of the tongue. Salt is detected by those at the front sides of the tongue. The taste buds along the edges at back of the tongue are good at detecting sour tastes, such as lemon, and those on the back of the tongue detect bitter tastes such as coffee. There are no taste buds in the center of the tongue. The tongue is also used in speaking. The combined action of the tongue, throat, mouth and lips changes the sounds into words.

**A) Answer the following questions :**

- 1-Name the four taste types mentioned in the passage and give an example of each.
- 2- How does saliva help us to taste food?
- 3- What does the underlined word (those) refer to?
- 4- What is different about the way a baby tastes from the way an adult tastes?

**B) Choose the correct answer :**

**5- Which one of these is not a liquid? -----**

- a) saliva      b) water      c) salt      d) lemon juice

**6- The center of the tongue -----**

- a) tastes food      b) doesn't taste food      c) is found in adult's mouth      d) tastes sour food

**7- The function of the tongue is to -----**

- a) taste food only  
 b) taste food and change the sounds into words  
 c) make words only      d) make sounds only

Complicated	معقد	tongue	اللسان	buds	براعم
gradually	تدرجيا	adult	بالغ	detect	يكشف
sour	حمضى	combine	يتوحد	Lips	شفاه

(10) El-Arish is one of the most important cities in Sinai . It has always been the gateway to Egypt and so it has been used by invading armies as far back as the Turks and Romans. These armies have destroyed a great deal of Arishi traditional culture . For example, there are hardly any original Arishi houses left. They used to be built around an open courtyard, but nearly all of them have, by now, been destroyed.

Nowadays, there are plans to develop the region. There will be no industrial complexes and huge cities. The developments will follow a “green “approach, and agriculture, fishing and tourism will be the key to the region’s development. North Sinai Bedouins have not been nomads for some time as they could not travel because of restrictions at borders. Nowadays, many Bedouins own farms on land which has been reclaimed from the desert. Other settled Bedouins became fishermen in Lake Baradawil. There has been a change in the lives of many Bedouin Women. In the old days, they were only allowed to look after the family and some of its animals. Now, many are managing their own businesses producing traditional handicrafts, such as carpets and cloth. Because of the absence of historic sites in the area, the planners are going to use its unpolluted environment to attract tourists. Tourists like unpolluted areas, therefore all new projects will protect the environment. This approach is called Ecotourism . Ecotourism will not only be good for the economy, it will help to protect our national heritage.

**A) Answer the following questions :**

- 1- How will North Sinai be developed in the future?
- 2- Why have most North Sinai Bedouins become settled?
- 3- What changes have come to the lives of many Bedouin women?
- 4- What is the meaning of Ecotourism? Why is it important?

**B) Choose the correct answer :**

**5- ----- destroyed most Arishi culture.**

- a) Turks    b) Invading armies    c) Romans    d) The courtyard

**6- Traditional houses were built around and open -----**

- a) courtyard    b) culture    c) green approach    d) environment

**7- The planners are going to use unpolluted environments to attract tourists owing to -----**

- a) the absence of historic sites    b) protecting the environment  
c) approach the tourists    d) producing traditional handicrafts

Gateway	بوابة	invade	يغزو	region	منطقة
approach	يقترّب	nomads	بدو	Bedouins	بدو
handicrafts	يدوية حرف	absence	غياب	ecotourism	المعالم سياحة

(11) In many countries today, a difficult question is being asked: Do we the right to use animals in laboratory experiments? Using animals in medical research has many benefits. Animal research has enabled researchers to develop treatments for diseases like smallpox without animal research. Every drug anyone takes today was tried first on animals. Which is more important, the life of a rat that of a three year old child? Medical research is also an excellent way of using animals in research, any more than it can be used as a reason for experimenting on other humans. Animals suffer a lot during these experiments. They are forced to live in small cages and they may be unable to move. Animals have the same rights as humans do, to be able to move freely and not to have pain or fear forced on them . We can use computer modeling instead of animals in research laboratories to save animals’ life.

**A) Answer the following questions:**

- 1- Why is animal research useful?
- 2- How do animals suffer during experiments?
- 3- What is the other way that can be used instead of experimenting on animals?
- 4- Are you with or against using animals?

**B) Choose the correct answer:**

**5- According to the passage, some people support using animals in research as they think that .....**

- a) the life of people is more important than the life of animals .
- b) animals are harmful creatures .
- c) many people do not like animals .
- d) animals do not suffer during experiments .

**6- The idea against using animals in research is that -----**

- a) the life of animals is more important than the life of humans .
- b) people should help to increase the number of animals .
- c) researchers have to use animals in their medical research .

**d) animals have the same rights as humans do .**

**7- An appropriate title for this passage would be -----**

- a) Scientific Research
- b) Research Laboratories
- c) Animal Rights
- d) Human Rights

right	حق	medical	طبي	researchers	باحثين
benefit	مصلحة	force	على يجبر	pain	ألم

(12) On leaving, Mrs. Magda gave last minute instructions to the new baby-sitter, a young girl of seventeen whose main work was to look after the baby. The girl had never done this work before and Mrs. Magda was a little bit anxious. "Make yourself comfortable, Soha." Mrs. Magda said "I've prepared a tray of food and fruit for you. It's on the table. You can, of course, listen to the radio or watch the television, but don't have it on too loud because it might wake our little baby. Sound moves terribly in this house. If the boy wakes up, go to his room and stay with there until he goes back to sleep. Anyway, he's two years old so you shouldn't have any trouble. My husband and I will than they had expected. They heard the sound of TV. A light was still on in the living room. The little baby was crying loudly. His face was living room immediately and came out, holding the baby who very hungry.

"What is she doing there? Where is Soha? She is fast asleep! She has eaten all the food here! "

**A) Answer the following questions :**

- 1- Why was Mrs. Magda worried about the baby-sitter?
- 2- What did Mr. & Mrs. Kamal find when they returned home?
- 3- What instructions did Mrs. Magda give the baby-sitter?
- 4- Was Soha a good baby-sitter or a bad one? Why?

**B) Choose the correct answer :**

**5- Although Mrs. Magda gave strict instructions to the baby-sister, she -----**

- a) forgot them
- b) carried them out
- c) neglected them
- d) followed them

**6- When Mrs. Magda returned home, she was surprised because -----**

- a) the baby-sitter was awake .
- b) the television was on .
- c) there was a light in the living – room .
- d) the baby was crying and Soha was fast asleep

**7- Mrs. Magda came home -----**

- a) before five
- b) after five
- c) at give
- d) at half past four

instructions	تعليمات	tray	صنية	return	يعود
--------------	---------	------	------	--------	------

(13) It was believed that being overweight was healthy but nowadays few people agree to this viewpoint. While many people are fighting the battle to reduce weight, studies are being performed concerning appetite and how it is controlled by both emotional and biochemical factors. Some of the conclusions of these studies may give us the ability to understand how deal with weight problems. For example, when several people were asked about their eating habits in times of stress, 44% said they reacted to stressful situations by eating

Further investigations of both humans and animals indicated that it is not food which relieves tension, but rather the act of chewing. A test showed that extremely fat people have a high sense of taste, and love more flavored food than thin people. When deprived of the variety of tastes, extremely fat people are not satisfied and consequently eat more to fulfil this need. Exercise has been recommended as an important part of weight-loss programmes. However, it has been found out that mild exercise is a way of losing weight because using the stairs instead of the lift is better in the long run than taking on a severe programme such as running slowly ( jogging ). Many people find jogging difficult to continue over long periods of time, it also increases appetite.

**A) Answer the following questions:**

- 1-What is the main idea of the passage?
- 2-What is the best treatment for overweight, according to writer's point of view?
- 3-What are the two kinds of exercises that help lose weight?
- 4-How does eating relieve tension?

**B) Choose the correct answer:**

**5- One of the emotional factors which control appetite is -----**

- a) jogging      b) chewing      c) eating      d) stress

**6- When fat people are deprived of the variety of taste they -----**

- a) lose weight      b) practice exercises      c) eat more      d) use flavours

**7- The word " further " in the passage means -----**

- a) more      b) super      c) greater      d) extreme

overweight	زائد وزن	viewpoint	نظر وجهة	stress	ضغط
biochemical	بيوكيميائي	emotional	عاطفي	investigate	من يتحقق
indicate	يوضح	tension	توتر	sense	حاسة
chewing	المضغ	recommend	يرشح	jogging	تمشية

(14) Samer lived with his parents until he was twenty-four years old, and then he got a job in an office of a big factory in another town, so he left home. He found a little flat and lived there on his own. At first he cleaned it himself, but after a few weeks he asked Mrs. Leila to help him. She promised to come to clean his flat for an hour every morning. After she had been working for Samer for two weeks, one evening, he looked at the mirror in his bedroom and thought, "That mirror looks very dusty. Mrs. Leila's forgotten to clean it, I can write on the dust with my finger! Before he left for work in the morning he wrote this message on the dust "I cough whenever I breathe because everything in this room is very dusty! " When he got home that evening, he looked at the mirror and wondered why she hadn't cleaned it. Then he bent down and saw a bottle in front of the mirror. He picked the bottle up and looked at it carefully. Mrs. Leila had written some words on it. He read the words "Cough Medicine "and he couldn't make head nor tail.

**A) Answer the following questions :**

- 1- Why did Samer leave his parents' home?
- 2- What caused Samer to cough?
- 3- How did Samer know that Mrs. Leila had read his message?
- 4- What do you think Mrs. Leila? Why?

**B) Choose the correct answer :**

**5- Samer found the mirror dirty, after Leila had been working for -----**

- a) a fortnight      b) a year      c) a month      d) fifteen days

**6- To ask Mrs. Leila to clean the mirror, Samer -----**

- a) wrote a letter      b) telephoned her      c) wrote a letter      d) spoke to her

**7- When Samer read the words on the bottle he -----**

- a) took the medicine      b) was happy      c) was interested      d) was confused

(15) During a recent car trip, I pulled into a rest area and was approached by a dirty man who asked for money to get petrol for his car. I rejected his appeal rationalizing that to give money to beggars would be to encourage a practice already on a disturbing rise in our country. Later, I had a change of heart. I handed the man ten pounds and wished him well, but I couldn't bring myself to grasp the outstretched hand he offered in appreciation. People begin and end almost every interaction with handshakes. Handshaking has become a thing of the past and increasingly dangerous, too. Risks associated with handshaking have become more threatening than the mere passing of germs from one person to another. It is true that diseases such as hepatitis can not be passed from one person to another through a simple handshake. But what about cold viruses? Rather than risk our health unnecessarily, we might adopt an alternative to handshaking, The "namaste" – placing your two palms together with fingers pointed upward – is used throughout much of the world as a display of respect when greeting someone. Similarly, the military salute would permit us to greet each other without touching. As a possible compromise between the "namaste" and the salute, we might consider the familiar Japanese bow .

**A) Answer the following questions :**

- 1- Why does the writer think handshaking is a bad habit?
- 2- Why did the writer hesitate to give money to the man?
- 3- What is the advantage of a military salute?
- 4- Are you with or against handshaking? Why?

**B) Choose the correct answer :**

**5- According to the writer, we ----- get cold viruses by handshaking.**

- a) can      b) can never      c) couldn't      d) never

**6- " I couldn't bring myself to grasp the outstretched hand " means that writer -----hands .**

- a) stretched his      b) shook      c) didn't shake      d) was able to shake

**7- There are ----- alternatives to handshaking.**

- a) no      b) two      c) three      d) four

Approach	من يقترب	reject	يرفض	appeal	نداء
rationalize	يبرر	disturbing	مزعج	outstretched	ممدود
associated	مرتبط	palm	اليد راحة	military salute	العسكرية التحية
hepatitis	الجلد التهاب	Compromise	تسوية	bow	ينحني

(16) Video and television are responsible for the declining interest in reading among the young. While they may be harmless in themselves, they do nothing to build up reading skills. If some of the hours children spend watching television were devoted to reading, they population would be better educated. Watching a story is a totally passive pastime. Someone else has made the decisions about everything in the story. Reading a story is an active partnership between writer and reader. Ideas are sketched and the mind of the reader creates the rest . Watching something is easier. The problem is that many children read very slowly. They decode a page or two in a class and about the same again for homework. It is hardly surprising that such children then declare that they find reading boring and prefer to watch television. Their difficulty is not reading the words-it is interpreting them. They need to be able to read fast enough to feed the mind's hunger for a story. That means practice. Only by reading daily will a child become a strong and independent reader. Parents need to be convinced of the importance of preventing their children from wasting their hours on inert viewing. Without the television the child is likely to turn to books for entertainment.

**A) Answer the following questions:**

- 1- What is the writer's main objection to video and TV?

- 2- Why is watching a story easier than reading it?
- 3- How can children be good readers?
- 4- The writer Thinks visual images, as watching television, spoil the imagination. Do you agree? Why?

**B) Choose the correct answer:**

**5- The underlined pronoun "they "refers to -----**

- a) the young
- b) video & television
- c) children
- d) reading skills

**6- The writer says that population would be better educated if children -----**

- a) do their homework
- b) watch TV
- c) read much
- b) read slowly

**7- According to the writer's view, TV is ----- means of entertainment**

- a) not an effective
- b) an encouraging
- c) an effective
- d) not a cheap

declining	انهيار	Pastime	تسلية	Interrupt	يقاطع
Daily	يومية	convince	يقنع	Inert	فعال غير - جامد

(17) The ancient Greeks always asserted that a healthy mind in a healthy body is the key to a well-balanced life. Nowadays many schools are decreasing the amount of time given to sports, and some schools are removing it altogether. Although academic subjects are certainly a very important part of the school curriculum, I am strongly opposed to the complete removal of sports. Firstly, schools have a responsibility to educate children in all areas. For that reason, it is just as important to provide sports practice for the professional sportsmen and women of the future, as it is to provide academic training to those who will go on to university. In addition, students these days spend long hours studying or working at their computers. Therefore, they need the opportunity to do some physical activity during the school day. This will not help to increase their level of fitness and make them healthier, it will also mean that they develop better social skills and are able to concentrate on their studies for longer, and thus achieve better result. In conclusion, I strongly believe that sports should remain a key part of the school curriculum. All children have the right to get a balanced education, and they should not be deprived of the opportunity to learn how to play sports.

**A) Answer the following questions :**

- 1-Does the write support or oppose the issue of increasing sport time at schools?
- 2-In your opinion, how could practicing sports at schools help students later in University and at work?
- 3-Why is it important to practise sports during the school day?
- 4-What should not children be deprived of?

**B) Choose the correct answer :**

**5- Which statement is not true?**

- a) Sports encourage team spirit
- b) Sports give the chance to be physically fit.
- c) Sports help students become more successful
- d) Sports lead to overweight

**6- The ancient Greeks believe that:**

- a) There is a connection between intelligence and a strong boy
- b) Well-balanced food is important
- c) There is a negative effect of sports on the body
- d) Studying is more important than sports .

**7- The word "key "means -----**

- a) lock
- b) necessary
- c) clue
- d) guide

assert	يؤكد	academic	متخصص - أكاديمي	Curriculum	منهج
removal	إزالة	remain	يظل	deprive of	من يحرم

## **Practice Tests:**

### **(1-1)**

In the winter, many animals and birds travel hundreds of kilometres to places with a warmer climate and more food. This incredible journey takes place every year at about the same time. It is common to see birds sitting on walls or telephone wires waiting to travel the long distance between the places where they spend their summers and their winters.

Scientists do not know exactly how they find their way to and from their winter homes. It is thought that there are different ways, for example, using the sun and stars for navigation. Some people believe that birds depend on their senses, including their sense of smell, to help them find the way. Some animals and birds travel thousands of kilometres. Blue whales have been known to travel up to 20,000 kilometres.

#### **A- Answer the following questions:**

1. Why do some birds and animals spend their winters and summers in different places?
2. How do birds and animals use the sun and stars?
3. What is surprising about the blue whale?

#### **B- Choose the best answer from a, b, c or d:**

##### **4. Why are the journeys birds and animals make incredible?**

- a) They take place at exactly the same time every year.
- b) They are very long.
- c) The birds and animals do not know where they are going.
- d) They take place in winter.

##### **5. Who does the word they refer to in the phrase they find their way?**

- a) scientists
  - b) winter homes
  - c) birds and animals
  - d) the sun and stars
- 
- 

### **(1-2)**

The Girl Against the Jungle is the story of a girl who is flying to Brazil with her mother. Suddenly, there is a storm and the plane crashes. The girl wakes up to find herself in the middle of a thick jungle. She is not badly injured, but there are parts of the plane around her and she discovers that she is the only survivor. She realises that it will be difficult for anyone to find her in the jungle, and she knows that if she stays where she is, she will die. Then she remembers some advice her father had given her many years before. He had said, "If you are lost in a jungle, you should find a river and follow it." The next day, she sets off to find a river. After walking for seven days, she comes to a small town, where people look after her.

#### **A- Answer the following questions:**

1. Where are the girl and her mother travelling to?
2. Where does the plane crash?
3. Where does the girl find herself after walking out of the jungle?

#### **B- Choose the best answer from a, b, c or d:**

##### **4. What is a survivor?**

- a- Someone who rescues people.
- b- Someone who does not die in an accident.
- c- Someone who dies in a plane crash.
- d- Someone who gets lost in a forest.

##### **5. How long does she walk for?**

- a- seven weeks
  - b- a year
  - c- a week
  - d- seven hours
- 
-



### **(2-1)**

The Taj Mahal, which is outside the city of Agra in India, was built by the Emperor Shah Jahan. It is a tomb for his favourite wife, Mumtaz Mahal. Her body is buried under the building. The Taj Mahal was started in 1633 and took 22 years to build. Today, it is one of the most popular buildings in the world for tourists.

The Taj Mahal is built of white stone which is covered with beautiful designs. The highest part of the roof of the Taj Mahal is shaped like an onion. In front of the building is a lake. At night, in the light of the moon, you can see the Taj Mahal in this lake - it is a beautiful sight.

#### **A- Answer the following questions:**

1. Who was Mumtaz Mahal?
2. In what year did they finish building the Taj Mahal?
3. Describe the Taj Mahal.

#### **B- Choose the best answer from a, b, c or d:**

##### **4. Why was the Taj Mahal built?**

- a) in memory of Shah Jahan.                      b) to attract tourists.  
c) in memory of Shah Jahan's wife        d) as a castle.

##### **5. Why can visitors sometimes see the Taj Mahal in the lake?**

- a) The water is like a mirror.                      b) The building is in the middle of a lake.  
c) The Taj Mahal is on an island.                      d) The city is often flooded.
- 
- 

### **(2-2)**

People suddenly started seeing the strange plants in their gardens last spring. No one had ever seen anything like them before, and no one knew where they had come from. At first some people pulled them out and burned them because they thought they looked horrible

But most people left them where they were, without touching them. The next summer, people enjoyed the big purple-coloured flowers that the plants produced.

It was not until August that people read in their newspapers the first reports that the plants could walk and run and even catch people and kill them. There is never much interesting news in August so people thought that journalists had made up these stories about waling plants to sell a few more newspapers and make money. Then in September, there was terrible news .....

#### **A- Answer the following questions:**

1. Why did some people destroy the plants?
2. How were the plants dangerous to people?
3. What did people think when they read the newspaper stories for the first time?

#### **B- Choose the best answer from a, b, c or d:**

##### **4. Where is this text from?**

- a- a newspaper    b- a science fiction story  
c- a detective story                                      d- a book on gardening

##### **5. What does them refer to in "the plants could walk and run and even catch people and kill them?"**

- a- the plants                      b- the journalists        c- the newspapers        d- the people
- 
-

**(3-1)**

The Metro is the name of the underground railway system in Paris, the capital of France. The system has 16 lines and over 300 stations. Together, the lines are about 200 kilometres long. The Paris Metro is the second busiest underground system in Europe after Moscow, and carries about five million passengers everyday. It is said that in the centre of Paris, you are never more than 500 metres from a Metro station.

The first line on the Metro was opened on July 19, 1900. The system grew quickly, but stopped in 1914, at the beginning of the First World War. By the early 1920s, the central part of the system was finished, although in the 1930s some of the lines were made longer to carry commuters to and from the outskirts of Paris.

**A- Answer the following questions:**

1. Which city has the busiest underground railway system in Europe?
2. Why did work on the Metro stop in 1914?
3. Why were some of the lines made longer in the 1930s?

**B- Choose the best answer from a, b, c or d:**

**4. In what year were the first journeys made on the Paris Metro?**

- a- 1930                      b- 1920                      c- 1914                      d- 1900

**5. Who or what are commuters?**

- a- electrical goods                      b- school children  
c- people who regularly travel to work                      d- university students
- 
- 

**(3-2)**

An old sailor visits the young Jim Hawkins and pays him to look out for his enemies. Jim escapes death when sailors come looking for the old man's secret papers. Jim finds the papers: among them is a map showing an island with buried treasure. Jim decides to look for the treasure and gets ready to sail. Unfortunately, his crew includes long John Silver, an evil man who also wants the treasure. Jim hears long John Silver's plan to attack his men and take over the ship. An exciting battle takes place. Jim escapes to the island, where he discovers Ben Gunn, an old man who has already found and hidden the treasure. At the end, long John Silver's men are beaten and Jim returns safely to the ship with the treasure.

**A- Answer the following questions:**

1. Why does the old sailor give Jim Hawkins money?
2. Why does everyone want the map that Jim finds?
3. What did Ben Gunn do with the treasure after he found it?

**B- Choose the best answer from a, b, c or d:**

**4. What kind of text do you think this is?**

- a- a newspaper story                      b- part of a novel  
c- a police report                      d- a letter

**5. What does the word *them* refer to in the phrase *among them is a map*?**

- a- Long John Silver's men                      b- the old man's enemies  
c- the secret papers                      d- the crew of the ship
- 
- 

**(4-1)**

Il Polio is the name of Italy's most famous horse race. It has taken place in the main square of the city of Siena on 2nd July and 16th August every year for hundreds of years. Siena has 17 districts, each with its own flag. The people who live in these districts used to be enemies who, fought each other, and though there are no longer fights, each district is still very proud of its riders and hopes they will win the race. On the morning of the race, the

horses and the riders can be seen walking through the city. People wear bright clothes and hold their district's flag. The horses have to run round the square three times and the race lasts around 90 seconds. The winner is not always the rider: a horse can win the race even if the rider falls off.

**A- Answer the following questions:**

1. Where does Il Polio take place?
2. How long does the race last?
3. What do the people of Siena have in their hands when they watch the race?

**B- Choose the best answer from a, b, c or d:**

**4. How many times a year does the race take place?**

- a) once                      b) twice                      c) three times                      d)seventeen times

**5. What does the word (each) refer to in Siena has 17 districts, each with its own flag?**

- a) each rider      b) each district      c) each horse d) each race
- 
- 

**(4-2)**

Scientists are very important to our future. What kinds of problems can they help us to solve. Here are just a few of these. Scientists can help farmers to produce good quality food for the world growing population. They can also develop new crops which do not suffer from diseases. Scientists and engineers can work with car companies to produce cars and other vehicles which use fuel more efficiently. At the same time, research scientists are looking for new types of energy to replace oil and petrol. Other scientists, too, are doing research into new treatments for serious illnesses. But perhaps the most important work scientists are doing is to find ways of reducing global warming.

**A- Answer the following questions:**

1. What is the main subject of this text?
2. In what two ways are scientists helping farmers?
3. How are scientists helping the medical profession?

**B- Choose the best answer from a, b, c or d:**

**4. Scientists are helping car companies by producing .....**

- a) cheaper cars    b) faster cars    c) more efficient cars                      d) safer cars

**5. What does these refer to in Here are just a few of these?**

- a) the scientists    b) kinds of food      c) the farmers                                      d) the problems
- 
- 

**(5-1)**

On June 16, 1963, Valentina Tereshkova became the first woman in space. She had been chosen from more than 400 others who applied. During her three-day flight, her rocket orbited the Earth 48 times. Valentina did tests on herself to find out how the experience affected women's minds and bodies. She reported that she felt ill for most of the time she was in space. Valentina Tereshkova was born in 1937 in the west of Russia. Her father worked as a tractor driver and her mother worked in a factory. She left school at the age of 16 and went to work in a factory. In her spare time, she enjoyed parachuting. After Valentina Tereshkova's space flight, it was 19 years before another Russian woman was sent into space. Today, Valentina is still a hero in Russia.

**A- Answer the following questions:**

1. How many women wanted to travel in space when Valentina applied for the job?
2. What does "the experience" mean in how "the experience affected women's minds and bodies"?



**B- Choose the best answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. Who does (they) refer to in talking about work they have done?

- a) lecturers      b) classes      c) students.      d) subjects

5. What does the writer suggest students should be prepared to do when they go to university?

- a) Be organised      b) Read many books      c) Find a job      d) Discuss ideas
- 
- 

**(6-2)**

Ed Hannigan has a job which few people would want. Every week he falls off horses, he crashes cars and jumps from tall buildings. He has broken nearly every bone in his body and has been in hospital ten times. Ed works on films and television programmes, doing the dangerous things that make them exciting. His main work is to replace famous actors who don't want to do dangerous things themselves. To do this kind of work, You need to be very fit has to be the same, height and weight as the actors he is replacing, and his hair and clothes also have to look exactly the same. Ed enjoys his work and does not worry about the danger "most thing I do are quite safe," he says.

**A- Answer the following questions:**

1. What kind of work does Ed do?
2. Why do famous actors not want to do dangerous things?
3. Why does Ed have to look like the actors he is replacing?

**B- Choose the best answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. What does them refer to in the dangerous things that make them exciting?  
a) the actors Ed replaces      b) films and television programmes  
c) the dangerous things      d) the jobs Ed does
  5. Which of these words describes' the work Ed does?  
a) popular      b) healthy      c) dangerous      d) boring
- 
- 

***With My Best Wishes  
MR. Ayman M. Ebrahim  
ELmahalla Secondary School For Boys***

## **7- The Reader " The Mask Of Mask "**

### **Chapter(1)**

Leila was an Egyptian archaeologist. She was going to Peru to join Dr Hafez's team on the excavation there as a part of the UNESCO exchange program in archaeology. She was taking with her a small laser dating-machine which is used to date old things like wood or cloth and some details of a new technique developed by the department of archaeology in Cairo. Her sister, Samira, drove her to the airport. She was a reporter on one of the Cairo newspapers. She was funny but Leila was worried. Leila told Samira that, in ancient times, the Incas in Peru had a great empire although they didn't have any writing. They conquered the Chimu who were famous for their gold and Silver work. Leila promised to send e-mails to tell her every thing

### **Chapter(2)**

Leila flew to New York and then changed planes to Lima, the capital of Peru. On the plane, she met Martin Lander. He said he was a mining engineer. He had an American passport although he had been born in South Africa. She told him that she was an archaeologist working on a UNESCO exchange programme in archaeology. She decided to take up archaeology as she used to listen to Dr Hafez, a friend of her family, talking about his excavations. She studied at the Italian Institute of Archaeology in Rome as she didn't want people think that Dr Hafez gave her special treatment. She also told him that she had worked with Dr Hafez in The Valley of Nobles in Luxor in Egypt. Lander tried to read the papers she was taking to Dr Hafez but she didn't give him the chance. She began to suspect him. Dr Hafez was waiting her at Lima airport. When she introduced Lander to Dr Hafez, he said they had met before but Lander denied.

### **Chapter (3)**

Dr Hafez and Leila took the plane from Lima to Cusco. He told her that they were digging a site near Cusco. He spoke about the similarities and differences between the Incas and the Ancient Egyptians in the ways they buried their dead. They both mummified their kings. They put gold and silver objects and food and drinks in their tombs- The Incas did things that the Ancient Egyptians never did. Every year, they held important festivals, they put their mummified kings on litters, dressed them in fine clothes and look them through the streets. They killed women and servants and buried them with the kings to help them in the next world. They also sacrificed children to please the gods. Dr Hafez told Leila that Lander got involved with some people in taking Inca treasures out of the country. He had to leave his job with the United Mining. Dr Hafez chose Leila to be his assistant and to be in charge of one team with three local archaeologists. Amelia a local archaeologist, received them at Cusco airport. She seemed to be unfriendly to Leila. She drove them to the camp.

### **Chapter(4)**

When they reached the camp, Leila was dead tired because of the jet-lag and high altitude. Dr Hafez went to Quenco to meet the UNESCO representative. The UNESCO would support the excavation till the end of the year but they would stop their support the next year if something important wasn't found. Amelia showed Leila the site. She said that Leila was in Peru because Dr Hafez was her family's friend. Leila replied that she was experienced and she and Dr Hafez worked together before in the tomb of Senofer in the Valley of Nobles in Egypt. Amelia told Leila that the Chimu sometimes built their tombs in the hillsides. The Incas conquered the Chimu but they allowed their kings to rule and sent their sons to Cusco to make sure that they were loyal. They met Pablo who worked for the Peruvian Ministry of Culture. He made a note of everything they found. He gave Leila a brief account of the Inca civilization. Ramon, one of the workers, was the first to go into the tomb through the hole in the wall because he was small. He found some human bones.

## **Chapter ( 5 )**

Leila complained about Amelia's unfriendly treatment. Dr Hafez advised her to make friends with her .Dr Hafez had problems with his lap-top computer. He would go to Quenco to have it fixed. Leila wandered in the old part of Quenco- Feeling tired, she went to a cafe to rest and to have a drink. She saw Amelia sitting with Martin Lander. She brought Dr Hafez to the cafe but they had gone. Dr Hafez asked her not to be so suspicious. When Leila returned to the camp, she used the internet and called up the United Mining Website. She found out that their operations in Peru had ended in 1999. so she discovered that Lander was a liar.

## **Chapter ( 6 )**

Dr Hafez, Leila, Amelia and Ramon went into the tomb. They found a skeleton of a man in a sitting position and there was a crack in the skull. Dr Hafez thought the man might have been killed but Leila believed that the skull might have been broken by falling rocks. Dr Hafez used the laser machine to date the pieces of cloth they found in the tomb. It was around 1400 which was the middle of the Inca period .Leila discovered a gold figure of a llama. Leila sent an e-mail to Samira to tell her about what had happened, They all went to the restaurant but Leila preferred to stay at the site. Then she walked over to the tomb. She found the door slightly open and a light coming from inside the tomb.

## **Chapter ( 7 )**

She went down the tomb and found Martin Lander. Leila told him that he was a thief but he said that he was a collector who appreciated fine things. He climbed the Ladder, pulled it up behind him and closed the wooden door. He trapped her inside the tomb. Leila spent a horrible night in the darkness and had a horrible dream in which she was attacked by the soldiers' swords . The next morning, Dr Hafez found her and helped her get out of the tomb. Dr Hafez called the police. They called the Immigration Department at the airport. They thought he would have a false name and a false passport, so it wasn't easy to arrest him. Leila discovered the gold Mask and Pablo put it in the safe. The next morning it was stolen.

## **Chapter ( 8 )**

The police examined the safe and found that it was opened with a key. They took everyone's fingerprints and searched everyone's things. The police arrested Leila and put her into a cell because they found a gold rabbit among her work clothes. She was set free when Amalia went to police station and confessed that she had put the gold rabbit among Leila's clothes. She asked Leila to forgive her. Amalia told Leila that Lander worked with her father when he was a mining engineer. He persuaded her father to put up some money for a silver mine. There was no mine. He caused her father to lose his money and become poor. Amalia and Leila were going to Acomayo to search for Lander there. There was another excavation taking place there

## **Chapter ( 9 )**

The road was dangerous. Amalia made an accident. She broke her leg. Leila had pains in her legs and arms and there was a cut in her face, Leila got Amalia out of the car, covered her with a blanket and made her a splint. She went to the nearest village to get help. A man and two women went with her and carried Amalia to their house. They gave her a hot drink and some leaves to chew. The next morning she brought a doctor who recommended taking Amalia to hospital in Cusco by helicopter. Dr Hafez. was suspicious of Pablo. In order to make him confess, Dr Hafez told him falsely that the police had caught Lander. Pablo confessed that he had helped Lander to steal the sold mask because he needed money to pay for the expensive medicines for his sick child.

## Chapter (10)

Pablo would meet Lander that night. They decided to follow Pablo and catch Lander. After meeting Pablo, Lander drove a small truck to the far side of the airport. Dr Hafez, Roman and Leila followed him. Lander got out of the truck to open the gate. Leila got into it and drove at Lander who got into a small-engine plane. Leila drove hard at the plane and knocked it into its side. Lander was knocked out. Dr Hafez called the police. After two days, the police found the gold mask and all the stolen things, Leila and Dr Hafez went to the village people to thank them for helping Amalia. On the way back, Leila showed Dr Hafez a new Inca site. A team of archaeologists was sent to the village and they assured it was so. Dr Hafez recommended Amalia to lead the team working on the new site. Leila came back to Egypt. At the airport, she was surrounded by photographers. The newspaper headlines were full of the story of the Egyptian archaeologist who made great discoveries in the land of the Incas, caught a thief and found a new Inca site.

### بعض التشابهات الهامة في القصة

- 1- " If we discovered a king's tomb, it would be wonderful to find some of their work "  
\* Leila to Samira
- 2- " We discovered a tomb that have wonderful paintings of birds and animals on the walls".  
\* Leila to Martin Lander
- 3- " Two days ago we found a wall in the city .We think it may be the wall of a tomb .We are going to break through into the tomb this week "  
\* Dr Hafez to Leila on the plane
- 4- " Yes ,we think so .But we won't know until we make a hole in the wall and see..... "  
\* Amelia to Leila in the site
- 5 " We excavated the tomb of Sennofer together .You may have heard of it ? "  
\* Leila to Amelia
- 6 " We opened a wall of a tomb .It may be the wall of a king . We are all very excited here "  
\* Leila to Samira in her first e- mail .
- 1- " There is also a picture of a llama .That's a sign that it may be a royal tomb "  
\* Dr Hafez to Leila .
- 2- " It means that it's the tomb of somebody important. ' ' This gold llama makes it more likely that it's a royal tomb "  
\* Dr Hafez to Amelia in the tomb.
- 3- "We need to find a gold mask to be absolutely sure "  
\* Amelia to Dr Hafez in the tomb.
- 4- " Of course , we need to find a gold mask to be sure it's the tomb of a king."  
\* Dr Hafez to Amelia
- 5- "It's hard work in the tomb, isn't it? Still I'm sure we'll find something definite "  
\* Amelia to Leila.
- 6- " this is an important excavation both for Peru and for the world. Everything we find....."  
\* Leila to Martin Lander.
- 1- " You must be careful ..., there are people who come to Peru and dig up old Inca cities "  
\* Dr Hafez to Leila on the plane
- 2- " So be careful what you say and who you speak to."  
\* Dr Hafez to Leila on the plane
- 3- " We have to be careful because there are many who come here to steal our culture and sell them to rich collectors " " \* Pablo to Leila and Amelia
- 4- " We must not let things fall into the hands of thieves."  
\* Leila to Pablo and Amelia
- 1- " Beautiful , so interesting and so sad " ( the small gold figure of a child )



- \* Pablo to Amelia and Leila in the site.
- 2-" There may be wonderful things inside the tomb "**
- \* Pablo to Amelia and Leila in the site.
- 3-" I think I've found something "** ( The gold figure of llama )
- \* Leila to Roman and Dr Hafez
- 4" I think I've found something interesting "**. ( The mask )
- \* Leila to Roman and Dr Hafez
- 5 -" She has found something important "**
- \* Leila to Samira in her second e- mail .
- 6-"I've found some help"**.
- \* Leila to Amelia
- 7" We have found the gold mask and the other stolen things."**
- \* The police chief to Dr Hafez

- 1-" Yes, it's an interesting idea , because there are some similarities between the ancient Egyptians and the ancient people of South America"**
- \* Leila to Martin Lander.
- 2- " It is very interesting to discover the similarities between the ways and the Incas and the Ancient Egyptians buried their dead "**
- \* Dr Hafez to Leila .

- 1-"These things should be in museums for every one to see but the thieves sell them to rich collectors**
- \* Dr Hafez to Leila on the plane
- 2-" There are even museums that buy objects that have been stolen from Peru"**
- \* Pablo to Leila and Amelia .
- 3- " Every thing we find here should go to a museum so that people can see "**
- \* Leila to Martin

- 1- " The Incas scarified children to please the gods "**
- \* Ramon to Amelia and Leila in the site.
- 2- " . Yes a person's life didn't have much value "**
- \* Ramon to Amelia and Leila in the site.

- 1- One of the archaeologists here obviously doesn't like me."**
- \* Leila to Samira in first e- mail
- 2--"There is only one thing that is worrying me. "**
- \* Leila to Samira in first e- mail
- 3- " She isn't very friendly towards me." " I don' think she likes me "**
- \* Leila to Dr Hafez

- 1- " I am sorry, I think badly of you "**
- \* Leila to Amelia.
- 2- " I 'm sorry for what happened . You must forgive me "**
- \* Amelia said this Leila They were in the cell of the prison .

**لاحظ أيضا هذه الاقتباسات الهامة**

- 1-" You have come at a good time "**
- \* Dr. Hafiz to Leila.
- 2-" I think we need to go . The plane to Cuzco leaves very soon ,doesn't it?"**
- \* Leila to Dr. Hafez
- 3- " I think a younger parson is needed "** \* Dr. Hafiz to Leila.
- 4-"I suppose that's why you are here in Peru "**

\* Amelia to Leila

5- " I was right Martin Lander was lying "

\* Leila to herself

6- " But I can't believe Amelia would do anything wrong. I trust her "

\* Dr. Hafez to Leila.

7-" He might have been killed "

\* Dr Hafez to the team of the work .

8-"Right in the middle of the Inca period" "Well that's a good start".

\* Pablo to Dr Hafez.

9- " I thought I recognized the man you were talking to." \* Leila to Amelia .

10- " It 's a matter of life and death " \* The doctor to Leila .

### ***Practical Tests (WB)***

#### **a) Answer the following questions:**

1 What did Leila see in Quenco that worried her?

2 How did Dr Hafez know how long the skeleton had been in the tomb?

#### **b) Complete the following to make meaningful sentences:**

1- When Leila told Dr Hafez what she had seen in Quenco, Dr Hafez found it hard to believe that Amalia .....

2- The archaeologists thought the man whose skeleton they found in the tomb might

#### **c) Read the quotation and answer the questions:**

"I thought I recognised the man you were talking to. I think I met him on the plane."

1 Who said this to whom?

2 Who is the man they are talking about?

#### **a) Answer the following questions:**

1- Why did Dr Hafez call the police? .....

2- What did the police find among Leila's work clothes?

#### **b) Complete the following to make meaningful sentences:**

1 They knew the tomb was a king's tomb because they.....

2 Amalia put the little gold rabbit among Leila's clothes because.....

#### **c) Read the quotation and answer the questions:**

"I was in complete darkness. It was not a nice feeling. There was no light and no sound. And it was cold. Time passed. I was very tired"

1- Where was Leila and why was she in complete darkness?

2- How did she get out of this uncomfortable situation?

#### **a) Answer; the following questions:**

1- How had Amalia's father lost all his money?

2- How did Leila stop Martin Lander's plane from taking off?

#### **b) Complete the following to make meaningful sentences:**

1- A helicopter came to..... "

2- Leila and Dr Hafez discovered that the village in the mountains was.....

#### **c) Read the quotation and answer the questions:**

"He told me how hard his life was, how little money he was paid. He told me he had a sick child and he needed to pay for medical expenses".

1- Who is Dr Hafez talking about? .....

2- What did this person do to get money? .....

#### **a Answer the following questions:**

1 Why did Dr Hafez keep looking round as he was talking to Leila on the plane?

2 What did the Peruvian archaeologist Ramon find?

**b Complete the following to make meaningful sentences:**

- 1) Dr Hafez told Leila that thieves sometimes .....
- 2) One of the most exciting days of Leila's life was when the archaeologists broke through....

**c Read the quotation and answer the questions:**

"It's really quite deep. I can see some bones and some bits of pottery".

- 1 Where is the person who says this?;
- 2 What does he go on to say about the bones?..

**a Answer the following questions:'**

- 1 Where had the girl been before she woke up in Cairo?
- 2 What did she take with her on her trip?

**b Complete the following to make meaningful sentences:**

- 1 The girl was away from her home in Egypt for .....
- 2 The Incas did not have .....

**c Read the quotation and answer the questions:**

"You're going so far away," she sobbed.

- 1 Who said this, and who did they, say it to?
- 2 When and where did she say this?

**a) Answer the following questions:**

- 1) What job did the man sitting next to Leila on the plane say he did?
- 2) What did Dr Hafez think when Leila introduced him to Martin Lander?

**b Complete the following to make meaningful sentences:**

- 1) Although Martin Lander has an American passport, he.....
- 2) When Dr Hafez met Leila at the airport, he asked her if .....

**c Read the quotation and answer the questions:**

"I decided I didn't want to tell this man. He spoke easily and confidently".

- 1) Why do you think Leila did not want to answer any more questions?
- 2) Later on the journey, Leila fell asleep. What did the man do while she was sleeping?

***With My Best Wishes***

***MR. Ayman M. Ebrahim***

***ELmahalla Secondary School For Boys***

## 8- Writing

### A) The Paragraph

#### A " The positive topic " الموضوع الأيجابي "

In fact.... العنوان.... is ( are ) considered a topic of great importance that's why we should give attention to it . We all agree that..... العنوان ..... Play(s) a lively role in our life because سبب الأهمية ..As a result of this, we can say that عنوان الموضوع has (have) positive effects on us and it is clear that it may lead us to a better life. Hence, it is necessary for us to do our best to benefit from it by all possible means and this can be done by several ways like... طريقة الاستفادة.....and..... To shed more light on that , I can say that we should double our efforts to achieve what we want .Briefly, we can say that if we follow these suggestions, we can enjoy our life . At last, not at least, we can say that عنوان need(s) a great interest from us.

#### B) The Negative topic " الموضوع السلبي "

It is a given fact that العنوان is (are) considered one of the most serious problems that we face in our life. It is clear that ,there are many causes that lead to this problem like أسباب المشكلة...This problem has negative and serious effects on us because تأثير المشكلة .....Therefore, we should do our best to solve and avoid this problem by all possible means . From my point of view, this problem can be solved easily. This can be done by several ways such as co-operation, spreading national awareness among citizens and hard work. Briefly, if we follow these suggested solutions, this problem will be solved sooner or later and we will be able to lead a happy life free from problems.

#### C) The advantages and disadvantages topic "موضوع المزايا والعيوب "

It is known that ...is a mixed blessing because it has some advantages and some disadvantages . First for all, I would like to start with its advantages. One of them, it is very useful when we use it in a good way like..... It will have another advantage if it is used in... On the other hand, it will have some disadvantages if it is used in a wrong way for example, some people use it in a wrong way such as .....and..... This will surely have a bad effect on us .Therefore, It is advisable to do our best to avoid its disadvantages and we should benefit from its advantages to lead a peaceful, happy and safe life free from problems.

### Another Kind of Writing the paragraph

A) المقدمة - In fact . العنوان is (are) considered a topic of great importance that is why we should direct our attention to it.\*(Or)-No one can ignore that العنوان is (are) considered one of the most important (serious) matters which we should give due attention to.

B) جمل بعد المقدمة - First of all ,I can say that عنوان الموضوع (a)الأيجابي .plays a lively role in our life because ... (b)السلبي .....has a bad and serious effect on us because.....) .

C) جمل الاستنتاج - As a result of this , we can mention that... عنوان الموضوع ...lead (leads) us to good (bad) effects on us and make ( makes ) us lead a happy ( bad ) life .

D) حمل الرأي -From my point of view we can say that we should do our best to benefit from (avoid) it by all possible means and this can be done by several ways such as .....

E) جمل الإضافة - - To shed more light on that I can say that we should double our efforts to....-In addition to this we can say that..... \ Moreover,... \ on the other hand.....

F) جمل قبل الختامية - Briefly, and as it was mentioned before ,we can say that if we follow these suggestions (solutions – opinions ) ,we can (enjoy our life) ( live in progress and prosperity) ( solve this problem and we can lead a happy life . )

G) الخاتمة - At last not at least we can say that العنوان (needs) a great interest from us

## ***B) The Letter Writing***

### **1- The letter "الخطاب العادي والرد"**

Dear اسم المرسل إليه ,

**المقدمة** - It gives me a great pleasure to write this letter to you. (خطاب عادي)

- You can't imagine my happiness (sorrow) when I got your letter. (خطاب رد)

**الغرض** - I send this letter ( to المصدر ) \ I send this message to tell you that....

ونبحث عن الفعل المنتهي بـ ing التي تحذف ليصبح الفعل مصدر ونكتب باقي الجملة مع تحويل الضمائر الآتية

{ he-she him-her-them.....you } ( I فاعل You ) ( you مفعول me ) ( your .....my ) ( his.....your )  
( her + اسم .....your ) { ( me ....you ) - I'd like to inform you that.... \ thank you for...- Don't forget to.....\ as for me I can tell you ...-Accept my apology for not...\ please I ask you to...- Please mention in detail some information about.....)

**الخاتمة** - I'm looking forward to hearing good news from you. With my best wishes.

Yours ,

اسم الراسل

## ***C) Writing an e-mail***

**From:**..... اسم وعنوان الراسل الألكتروني إذا وجد

**To:** ..... اسم وعنوان المرسل إليه الألكتروني إذا وجد

**Date:** 15<sup>th</sup>, June , 2011 ( التاريخ .)

**Subject :** .. (invitation-congratulation-complaint apology- request) الغرض من الرسالة باختصار

Dear اسم المرسل إليه ,

How are you ? I want to tell you that .....

.....موضوع الرسالة.....

Best wishes

اسم الراسل

## **Some Important Paragraphs**

### **Space exploration**

Many people believe that space exploration is a waste of money. They think that the money we spend on space exploration should be spent on education and health or it should be used to solve problems like global warming and climate change. Other people believe we should spend the money on growing more food and on better transport. But space exploration is very important. Everyone benefits from space technology in their everyday lives. For example, satellite technology is used for mobile phones and television. Moreover, people have always explored their world, so the next step is to explore space. In addition, space exploration is exciting. We may need to live in space in the future, so we should explore space to find out if there is any kind of life on other planets. In short, space exploration is really worth the money we spend on it.

### **What families can do to save energy**

All of us can do many things to save energy. We should all use energy more wisely. Families can recycle paper, plastic, glass and aluminium cans. They can turn the air conditioner down. They can use energy-saving bulbs. Family members can use their cars less. Walking and cycling are great forms of exercise. They can use energy-efficient home appliances. They should turn off computers and televisions when they are not using them. They should not leave lights on when there is no one in the house. They can use fans instead of air conditioners as they use less electricity. They should buy things that can be used over and over instead of buying disposable items that are used once and then thrown away. In fact, saving energy is very important nowadays.

## **How reading literature improves our education**

Reading literature plays a very important role in improving our education. It helps us to enrich our vocabulary and learn the language better. It enriches our own experiences. It helps us to benefit from other people's experiences. It enables us to get in touch with the cultures of other nations and know about their customs and ways of life. It also helps us to understand other people and solve our problems. It helps us to gain more knowledge about life and the world in which we live. It helps us to do the right things in different situations. Schools should do their best to help students to enjoy reading literature. In fact, we learn a lot from reading literature.

## **How to protect our historical monuments**

Our historical monuments are priceless treasures and we should do our best to protect them. They are very important for tourism which brings in a lot of hard currency. They are also important because they are part of our history. People should recognise the importance of our historical monuments. Therefore, we have to make great efforts to protect them. We should take great care when we set up new projects near historical monuments. We should also protect them from natural disasters such as earthquakes and torrential rains. We should discourage tourists from polluting historical places. We have to repair and maintain our historical monuments regularly. There must be strict laws to punish people who steal or destroy our historical monuments.

## **Why Egypt will need more scientists in the future**

Egypt will certainly need more scientists in the future. Scientists make discoveries and advances which help us to keep with the changes in our world. Scientists will help to improve everyday life by finding ways to grow more food for the growing population. They will also work hard to find cures for illnesses. We need all kinds of scientists to solve all sorts of problems. We need environmental scientists to find ways to protect our environment. We need food scientists to test food and its nutritional value. Nuclear scientists will do their best to make nuclear power cleaner and safer. Chemists can find new ways to use chemicals in everyday life. Medical scientists will help people to overcome diseases and live a healthier life. Space scientists will help us to use knowledge of space to make our life on earth better. In sort, scientists are very important to our future.

## **Using modern technology to increase food production in Egypt**

As the Egypt's population continues to grow and climate change makes it more difficult to produce food in the traditional way, scientists are developing new ways of growing plants efficiently. One of these ways is growing plants without soil. We can also grow new high yield crops by using genetic modification technology. We can also use modern technology to grow crops in desert areas. Technology can help us to find ways to preserve food for longer periods of time. Modern machines can be used to irrigate fields. Modern technology can help us to find ways to fight insects and pests without harming crops. Therefore, modern technology can play a vital role in increasing food production in Egypt.

## **الأزمة المالية The financial crisis**

Most world countries are now suffering from a financial crisis. This problem has serious effects on the economy. The prices of most goods and products have gone up. Moreover وعلاوة على ذلك , the prices of houses and land have increased. Poor countries are more affected than others. Egypt is doing its best to overcome تتغلب علي this problem. The government is planning to maintain تحافظ علي the rate of economic growth. معدل النمو الاقتصادي It is trying to encourage investment الاستثمار in different fields. Banks are offering loans قروض to young men to help them set up their own projects. We all have to work together to solve this problem. We must reduce consumption نفق الاستهلاك and increase production. We should increase our exports الصادرات and reduce our imports الواردات. We should encourage our local products.

## **انفلونزا الخنازير (H1N1) Swine Flu**

Swine flu (H1N1) is a serious disease. It is spreading all over the world. Thousands of people have died of swine flu. This disease can be treated. We can avoid this disease by following the rules of hygiene. For example, we should cover our noses and mouths when we cough or sneeze. We should wash our hands well before and after eating. We must eat food that contains vitamin C. We should avoid other people who appear to be sick. We should stay away from crowded areas. The government does its best to protect all citizens from this serious disease. A lot of people recover from this disease without any need for drugs.

## **Global warming / The problem of climate change**

Global warming is a problem that affects every country in the world. It is the most serious problem that human beings have to face in the twenty-first century. Global warming means that the earth's temperature is rising. It has a very serious impact on the climate. All countries must work together to find suitable ways to solve this problem. We should stop cutting forests. If the forests are destroyed, this will change the world's climate. Temperatures will go up, sea levels will rise and there will be changes in rain and snowfall. When you plant a tree, you are helping the environment to solve this serious problem. Trees are vital to our life. We should also reduce the amount of carbon dioxide in the air. Many conferences have been held to discuss this problem and try to find an effective solution to it.

## **(Computers)**

The computer is the most important invention in the twentieth century. Children enjoy using computers. They help communicate with people in other countries very quickly. Computers store a lot of information. You can work from home if you have a computer. Computers are now used in all fields. We can now use computers to learn a new language. Doctors use computers to help them diagnose diseases and treat patients. Banks cannot do without computers. Teachers use computers in schools so that students can learn better and faster. But computers have some disadvantages. Computers are different. Some of them are difficult to use. A lot of computer games are violent. Some children spend too much time indoors playing computer games. Using computers for too long can harm our eyes.

## **The importance of trees**

Trees are very important to our life. They take in carbon dioxide and give us oxygen. If we cut down too many trees, there would be more carbon dioxide. This is very harmful. Therefore, trees protect us from global warming. Trees provide us with many useful things such as rubber المطاط and medicines. Some trees may provide a cure for diseases like cancer. Planting trees is very useful. We have to plant more trees, especially in towns and cities. This helps to reduce the amount of pollution. Trees help to keep the balance of nature. If the balance of nature is upset, life on Earth will be impossible. We have to take great care of trees and punish those who cut them down.

## **The disadvantages of modern technology**

It is an undeniable fact that modern technology has greatly improved man's life everywhere. It has made man's life easier and more comfortable. However, modern technology has several disadvantages. One of them is pollution. Pollution is very harmful to man's life and can cause many diseases. The great development in industry has led to an increase in the amount of carbon dioxide which is released into the atmosphere. This has led to climate change and global warming. Radiation from TV and computer screens may harm our eyes. Using mobile phones for too long may be very harmful. Man now depends too much on machines. There are a lot of people who can't find jobs because we use machines to do most of our work use machines to do most of our work.

## إعادة التصنيع Recycling

Many countries reuse materials that are thrown away. This recycling process extracts the original material *المادة الأصلية* and uses it in new products. In general, using recycled materials *المواد المعاد تصنيعها* to make new products costs less and needs *يتطلب* less energy than using new materials. The most widely recycled waste product is printed *المطبوعة* materials. Glass is a material which is economical to recycle. The recycled glass is melted *يصهر* and formed into new products. Some kinds of nuclear waste *النفايات النووية* can be recycled. Rare materials, such as gold and silver, are recycled because getting new supplies is expensive. Recycling reduces pollution because recycling a product creates less pollution than producing a new one.

## -The problem of over - population

It has become clear that over population in Egypt is a serious problem. It results in other more serious problems. Our youth can't find a flat to marry in or a suitable job to start their life. There is also a possible shortage *نقص* of food. Our cities became very crowded, they lack the needed infrastructure for living. So it has become a must that we should invade the desert. The government does its best to encourage people to have small families through public awareness programmes on t.v. and papers. It send campaigns to remote and small villages to offer people information about birth control

## Political Reform in Egypt

No doubt that president Mubarak is the pioneer of the recent political renaissance in Egypt. He started the political reform since the very beginning of his ruling era. He gave orders to release the political prisoners shortly after he had received the power. Then, he called all the Egyptians to take part in the political life freely through any political party. In his era the freedom of press law was issued. He called all journalists to publish facts and truth with respect to the rights of others.

Finally he called the people's assembly to issue a new law enabling others to nominate themselves to hold the post not after him but from him if they were elected by the Egyptian people. Now we all feel the changes that will end with free practice to democracy in Egypt.

## Revolution Of The Youth

On the 25th of January, 2011 thousands of Egyptian young men and women marched peacefully to Tahreer Square in Cairo and in many other Cities in Egypt such as Alexandria, Suez and Ismailia. They all demanded Mubarak's overthrow and the resignation of his government. They wanted a civilian state where peace, love, equality and standard of living and new job opportunities for the millions of unemployed youth. Finally they succeeded in achieving some of their demands, but after a big number of them had sacrificed their lives to create a new Egypt, where people have the right to say their opinions freely without fear, with a new government that acts to achieve comprehensive development and social reform. They have put an end to Mubarak's era which included unfair treatment to the Egyptian people, social injustice, a lot of detainees without judgment, forging the elections and corruption. The demonstrated young people also demanded constitutional amendments and authority transition, so that peace safety and security would prevail all over Egypt. The World will never forget this great uprising of the great Egyptian youth.

***With My Best Wishes***  
***MR. Ayman M. Ebrahim***  
***ELmahalla Secondary School For Boys***



## 9- Translation

### عزيزي الطالب عليك بالتالي عند حل سؤال الترجمة

1. اقرأ قطعة الترجمة كاملة أكثر من مرة لتأخذ فكرة عامة.
2. ابدأ في ترجمة كلمات القطعة واترك الكلمات الصعبة للنهاية.
3. قم بصياغة ما ترجمته في شكل جمل وحاول استنتاج الكلمات الصعبة من سياق الموضوع.
4. تجنب الترجمة الحرفية ويمكنك إضافة بعض الكلمات لاستقامة معني القطعة.

### عند ترجمة الجملة الفعلية إلى اللغة الإنجليزية نبدأ بالفاعل .

قرر الدكتور مجدي يعقوب ان يصبح جراحاً للقلب عندما توفيت عمته بسبب أزمة قلبية.

\*Professor Magdi Yacoub decided to become a heart surgeon, when his aunt died because of a heart problem.

\*We should take part in building our country. علينا أن نساهم في بناء بلدنا .

\*World civilization owes a great deal to the Arabs. تدين حضارة العالم بالكثير للعرب.

\*Youth can change the desert into green land. يستطيع الشباب أن يحول الصحراء إلى أرض خضراء.

الجملة العربية قد تستغنى عن الفعل ولكن لا بد من وجود فعل في الجملة الإنجليزية

\*Science is a double-edged weapon. العلم سلاح ذو حدين

لا يظهر v.to be في المضارع عند الترجمة للعربية ولكن يظهر في الماضي

الدكتور مجدي يعقوب مثال جيد للجراح المصري الناجح

\*Professor Magdi Yacoub is a good example of a successful Egyptian surgeon.

v.to be قد يترجم إلى ضمير شخصي في اللغة العربية ( هي / هو / هما..)

\*My favourite hobby is listening to music. إن هوايتي المفضلة هي الاستماع إلي الموسيقى

وقد يترجم (v.to be) إلى فعل آخر بما يتوافق مع سياق الكلام أو يحذف.

\*Freedom is a main demand for all peoples.

تمثل الحرية مطلب رئيسي لجميع الشعوب. الحرية مطلب رئيسي لجميع الشعوب

\* v.to have - لقد أصبح متاحاً لكل طالب اقتناء جهاز حاسب الي ( 3 ث 2005 )

\*It has become available for each students to have a computer set.

الضمائر المستترة في العربية pronouns يجب اظهارها عند الترجمة إلى الإنجليزية

يفخر بأن التعليم هو المشروع الأول في مصر ( 3 ث 2003 )

\*We're proud that education is the first national project in Egypt

لام التعليل تترجم إلى : المصدر + to / so as to / In order to ...

\*He sat up all night so as to get all his work over سهر طوال الليل لينهي جميع أعماله.

\* الضمير المضاف إلى فعل يترجم إلى (ضمير مفعول us-them -me-him-her

إن تعلم اللغات الأجنبية يمكننا من قراءة الصحف العالمية.

\*Learning foreign languages enable us to read the international newspapers.

الضمير المضاف إلى اسم يترجم إلى (صفة ملكية (his-our-its -her-their-my)

يزور مصر كثير من السياح كل عام لمشاهدة آثارها القديمة

\*Every year, a lot of tourists visit Egypt to watch its ancient monument

الصفة تأتي قبل الاسم عكس اللغة العربية ويسبقها (a) أو (an) إذا كان الاسم مفرد (دور رئيسي a main role)

an ambitious man	رجل طموح	a serious problem	مشكلة خطيرة
human life	الحياة البشرية	nervous breakdown	انهيار عصبي
hard times	أوقات عصيبة	fascinating natures	طبيعة ساحر
a boring man	رجل ممل	an enjoyable journey	رحلة ممتعة
cold wars	الحروب الباردة	a serious disease	مرض خطير
vast areas	مناطق شاسعة	peaceful ways	طرق سلمية
fatal diseases	أمراض فتاكة	an optimistic person	شخص متفائل

وأيضاً الأسماء المعنوية لا تأخذ the عند ترجمتها إلى الإنجليزية

Honour	الشرف	Virtue	الفضيلة	Peace	السلام
Beauty	الجمال	Love	الحب	Friendship	الصدقة
truth	الصدق	progress	التقدم	Honesty	الأمانة

يرجع التقدم في الزراعة والصناعة والطب إلى العلم الحديث

\*Progress in agriculture, industry and medicine is due to modern science.

فهنا نتكلم عن التقدم والصناعة والزراعة بصفة عامة فلا يصح أن نقول The progress

ولكن إذا خصصنا وقتنا للتقدم في مصر The progress in Egypt .....

\* - الصفة المسبوقة بـ ( the ) ولا يتبعها أسم تترجم إلى اسم جمع في اللغة العربية

\*الأغنياء the rich - الفقراء the poor - الصم the deaf - البكم the dumb

(من+صفة+ (لـ / على) مفعول + أن + فعل) تترجم إلى

It is + المصدر + to + المفعول + for + الصفة + It

من الضروري لنا ان نتعلم لغة اجنبية

\*It's necessary for us to learn foreign language.

الأسماء التي لا تجمع **Uncountable Nouns** لا تأخذ أداة المعرفة **the**

paper	الورق	luggage	الأمثلة	baggage	الحقائب
Grass	العشب	money	المال	oil	الزيت
electricity	الكهرباء	information	معلومات	news	أخبار

**كلمات التوكيد في اللغة العربية ليست لها ترجمة:**

Industry is the basis of development إن الصناعة هي أساس التنمية

- حرف الـ ( س ) وكلمة ( سوف ) المرادف لهما في اللغة الإنجليزية هو زمن المستقبل البسيط

\*The government will build a lot of schools.

ستبنى الحكومة مدارس كثير

**لقد + فعل ماضى وفي الجملة إشارة تدل على الماضى البسيط تترجم إلى ماضى بسيط**

\* He telephoned me yesterday.

لقد اتصل بي أمس هاتفياً

**لقد + فعل ماضى بدون أى إشارة تدل على الماضى تترجم لمضارع تام**

\*The state has taken great interest in education .

لقد اهتمت الدولة بالتعليم

\*Science has helped man to lead a comfortable life.

لقد ساعد العلم الإنسان على أن يحيا حياة مريحة

لقد أصبح من الواضح إن الإدمان هو وباء العصر

\*It has become clear that addiction is the plague of the age.

لقد شهدت مصر قفزة حضارية كبيرة فى جميع المجالات

\*Egypt has witnessed a great cultural leap in all fields.

**قد + فعل مضارع فإن ذلك يدل على الاحتمال ونستخدم may**

قد يشهد هذا العام تطورات هائلة نحو السلام

\*This year may witness immense development towards peace.

**لن + فعل مضارع يقابله في الإنجليزية مستقبل بسيط منفي: future simple:**

\*I won't do that again.

لن أفعل ذلك مرة أخرى

**لم + فعل مضارع يقابله في الإنجليزية ماضى بسيط: Past simple:**

Ahmed did not attend my birthday party. لم يحضر أحمد حفل عيد ميلادى

**كان + فعل مضارع يقابله في الإنجليزية ماضى مستمر:**

\*Dad was reading the paper when the doorbell

كان والدى يقرأ الصحيفة عندما دق جرس الباب

rang

**كان + فعل مضارع يقابله في الإنجليزية الماضى البسيط إذا دل على عادة في الماضى**

كان القدماء المصريون يبنون أهرامهم من الحجارة

\*The Ancient Egyptians built their pyramids of stones.

I saw him playing

الفعل المضارع في اللغة العربية قد يقابله في الإنجليزية الفعل + ing :

**كان + قد + فعل ماضى يقابله في الإنجليزية الماضى التام:**

When I arrived at the cinema the film had started.

عندما وصلت إلى السينما كان الفيلم قد بدأ.

**فعل الكينونة في اللغة العربية يمكن الاستغناء عنه:**

He is a successful teacher .

انه مدرس ناجح

**في حالة المضاف والمضاف إليه تستخدم of أو يأتي المضاف إليه ثم المضاف**

book fair معرض الكتاب Birth rate = the rate of birth معدل المواليد

Pollution of environment = environment pollution

Standard of living = living stander مستوى المعيشة

لا يوجد مفعول مطلق في اللغة الإنجليزية ( بدلا من ذلك نستخدم الفعل يليه الحال)

developed greatly	تطورت تطوراً كبيراً
treat well	يعامل معاملة حسنة
affect badly	يؤثر تأثيراً سلبياً
improved gradually	تحسنت تحسناً تدريجياً
punish severely	يعاقب عقاباً شديداً

قد يختلف حرف الجر في اللغتين

contribute to	يسهم في
object to	يعترض على
fond of	مغرم بـ
believe in	يؤمن بـ
prefer .... to ...	يفضل

بعض الأفعال في اللغة الإنجليزية لا يأخذ حرف جر ( بينما تأخذ في اللغة العربية )

contain	يحتوي علي	need	يحتاج إلى	Affect	يؤثر على
overcome	يتغلب على	fear	يخاف من	enjoy	يتمتع بـ
admire	يعجب بـ	feel	يشعر بـ	celebrate	يحتفل بـ

يراعى زمن الجملة وصيغتها (مبنى للمجهول أم مبنى للمعلوم)

Tourism is considered an important source	تعتبر السياحة مصدراً هاماً
We consider tourism an important source	نحن نعتبر السياحة مصدراً هاماً

## Some important words

### ☞ Elections of People's Assembly

parliament elections	الانتخابات البرلمانية	make his own decision	يتخذ قراراً بنفسه
people's Assembly	مجلس الشعب	democratic experience	التجربة الديمقراطية
strong competition	منافسة قوية	trust to represent	يثق به لتمثيل
The recent elections have	الانتخابات الأخيرة	supervision of judiciary.	إشراف القضاء
candidates of parties	مرشحين الأحزاب	the public interest	المصلحة العامة
the independents	المستقلين	have / has the right to	له الحق أن
representation for women	بتمثيل المرأة	vote	يدلي بصوته
elections was marked	تميزت الانتخابات	peaceful nuclear program	برنامج نووي سلمي
v to be + deprived of	تكون محرومة من	support	يؤيد / يدعم
a vice-president	نائب الرئيس	the appointment of	تعيين
forging the elections	تزوير الانتخابات	contestations	طعون
fair (honest) elections	انتخابات نزيهة	await	يتربص بـ
witnessed (experienced)fraud	شهدت تزوير	invalid elections	انتخابات باطلة
the National Party	الحزب الوطني	opponents	المعارضون

### ☞ The Nile Crisis

Nile Basin countries	دول حوض النيل	emergency meeting	اجتماع طارئ
Egypt's share	نصيب مصر	improve our relationship with	أن تحسن علاقاتها مع
upstream countries	دول المنبع	constructive political dialogue	حوار سياسي البناء
downstream countries	دول المصب	deal with this seriously	نتعامل مع هذا بجدية
Egypt's quota of Nile water	حصة مصر لمياه النيل	a matter of life or death	مسألة حياة أو موت
lifeblood = artery of life	شريان الحياة	the main source of	المصدر الرئيسي

## ☞ Different events

swine (pig) flu = H1N1	انفلوانزا الخنازير	African nations' cup	كأس الأمم الأفريقية
disaster = catastrophe	كارثة	pioneer	رائد
take measures	تتخذ إجراءات	marvels - wonders	معجزات - عجائب
put an end to	نضع نهاية لـ	driving licence	رخصه قيادة
stand as a one man	نقف كرجل واحد	chase = run after	يطارد
symptoms	أعراض (مرض)	great fun	متعه كبيرة
epidemic	وباء	in favour of	مؤيد لـ
infection	العدوى	food shortage	نقص الغذاء
illiteracy	الأمية	requirements	متطلبات
compete	تتنافس	ministry	وزارة
loyalty and belonging	الولاء والانتماء	take wide steps	يتخذ خطوات واسعة
mass media	وسائل الإعلام	benefits	فوائد
unemployment	البطالة	glorious history	تاريخ مجيد
influence	تؤثر - تأثير (معنوي)	reopening	إعادة افتتاح
convince = persuade	يقنع	support	يساند - تأييد - مساندة
Egyptian economy	الاقتصاد المصري	private sector	القطاع الخاص
possible facilities	التسهيلات الممكنة	thanks to	بفضل
tolerant	متسامح	qualifications	مؤهلات
embassy	سفارة	advanced technology	تكنولوجيا متقدمة
reduce = cut down	يخفض - يقلل	renaissance	النهضة
launch a campaign	يطلق - يشن حملة	training centers	مراكز تدريب
exist / existing	يوجد \ الموجودة	vocational training	التدريب المهني
manufacture	تصنيع - يصنع	with great speed	بسرعة فائقة
glorious history	تاريخ مجيد	modern technology	التكنولوجيا الحديثه
social and health care	رعاية صحية واجتماعية	potentials	إمكانيات
reflect	تعكس	revolution	ثورة
recycle	إعادة استخدام الشيء	information systems	نظم المعلومات
celebration	احتفال	communication	الاتصالات
proficiency	كفاءة	comprehensive peace	سلام شامل
citizenship	المواطنة	establishments	مؤسسات
organize = host	ينظم- تستضيف	strong performance	عرض - أداء قوى
base	أساس - قاعدة	public services	الخدمات العامة
greatness	عظمة	honour/ pride	يكرم - يشرف \ فخر
deepness of civilization	عمق الحضارة	athletics events	أحداث رياضية
a sports festival	مهرجان رياض	intense competition	مناقسة قوية
gain a good reputation	يكسب سمعة جيدة	celebrate ( with)	يحتفل
prove	يثبت - يبرهن	pleased people	أسعدو الناس
the state - nation - home	الدولة - أمة - وطن	people's need	احتياجات الشعب
flourish / refresh	تزدهر \ ينتعش	be + in a bad need of	في حاجة ماسة إلى
Prosperity / welfare	الرخاء \ الرفاهية	purify air from	ينقى الهواء
civilization	حضارة	necessity = a must	ضرورة
humanity	الإنسانية - البشرية	foreign trade	التجارة الخارجية
a peace - loving country	دولة محبة للسلام	differ from	يختلف عن
the current of reform	تيار الإصلاح	gap	فجوة
medical field	المجال الطبي	globalization	العولمة
seek to = aspire ( try) to	تسعى - تصبو من أجل	dialogue	الحوار
create	يخلق- يبدع- يسبب	reclamation	استصلاح
reclaim the desert	يستصلح الصحراء	sincere efforts	جهود مخلصه
Proof = evidence	دليل- برهان	corner stone	ركن الزاوية

evaluate	يقيم- يقدر	optimism	التفاؤل
assassination	اغتيال – إعدام- قتل	pessimism	التشاؤم
realize	تدرك- يحقق	huge responsibility	مسؤولية ضخمة
the narrow Nile Valley	وادي النيل الضيق	principles	مبادئ
world armament race	سباق التسلح العالمي	individuals	الأفراد
factors	عوامل	elect – election	ينتخب- انتخاب
among	بين ( أكثر من اثنين )	deal with =treat	يتعامل مع
spread	ينتشر- ينتشر	inflation of population	التضخم السكاني
national awareness	الوعي القومي	illiteracy	الأمية
ambassador	السفير	private sector	القطاع الخاص
prevail	يعم – يسود	improve	يحسن
housing problem	مشكلة الإسكان	free of charge	مجانا
the only solution	الحل الوحيد	participate in= share in	يشارك في
bring the prices down	تخفيض الأسعار	contribute to + (v+ ing)	يساهم في
unemployment	البطالة	to a great extent	على حد كبير
infrastructure	البنية الأساسية	on equal footing	على قدم المساواة
task	مهمة	medical assistance	مساعدة طبية
double	يضاعف	do without /live without	يستغنى عن
carry out	تنفذ	support	يساند – يؤيد- يدعم
call for	ينادي من أجل	disputes	نزاعات- خلافات
spare no effort	لا يدخر وسعا	revival	إحياء
promote	يرقى - يدعم	a graduate of	خريج
pay (give ) attention to	يعطى اهتمام لـ	career	حيا مهنية
enable ...to	يمكن	revenue = income	دخل /عائد
enrich	يثري / يخصب	means of entertainment	وسيلة ترفية
aspects = fields	مجالات- نواحي	stick to	يلتزم بـ - يتمسك بـ
perform = render	يؤدي	fruitful	مثمر
offer	يقدم	Profitable	مربح
service	خدمة	defy = challenge	يتحدى
mass media	وسائل الإعلام	unsuitable for	غير ملائم بـ
convey = transport	ينقل	spirit refreshing	تهذيب الروح
experience	خبرة – تجربته في الحياة	a bright future	مستقبل مشرق
v to be + aware of	على علم بـ	a means - means of	وسيلة - وسائل
public health = sanitation	الصحة العامة	prevail	يسود- يعم
illegal migration	هجره غير شرعيه	heavenly religions	الأديان السماوية
generation	جيل	the space channels	القنوات الفضائية
propaganda	دعاية	on a wide scale	على نطاق واسع
deepen - souls	يعمق – نفوس	treat \cure	يعالج مرض- علاج
raise the Egyptian flag	يرفع العلم المصري	renew	يجدد
resist = withstand	يقاوم	out of date	قديم
moral values	القيم الأخلاقية	up to date	حديث
protect from /against	يحمى من \ ضد	strong relations	علاقات قوية
deviation	الانحراف	benefit from	يستفيد من
advantage# disadvantage	ميزة # عيب	respond to	يستجيب لـ
self-sacrifice	التضحية بالذات	strengthen	يقوى
public opinion	الرأي العام	v be + exposed to danger	يتعرض للخطر
make us aware of	يجعلنا على وعى	refer to	يشير الى
current events	الأحداث الجارية	relieve the burden	يخفف العبء
the only solution	الحل الوحيد	giant projects	مشروعات عملاقة
the standard of living	مستوى المعيشة	world environment day	يوم البيئة العالمي

scientific methods	الطرق العلمية	christians	مسيحيين
a threat \ threaten	تهديد \ يهدد	result from	ينتج عن
a means not an end	وسيلة لا غاية	sacrifice	يضحي - أضحية
impose restrictions	يفرض قيود	western culture	الثقافة الغربية
attitude	سلوك - اتجاة - موقف	professionals	محترفين
fight for \ against	يحارب لصالح \ ضد	mineral wealth	ثروة معدنية
remain	يظل - يبقى	prospect for	ينقب على
monopoly	احتكار (سلعة)	react	يتفاعل
investment	استثمار	radiation	إشعاع
consume	يستهلك	nuclear power	الطاقة النووية
consumer	مستهلك	discipline	النظام
rationalization of consumption	ترشيد الاستهلاك	corruption	الفساد
inaugurate	يفتح	astronauts	رواد الفضاء
inauguration	افتتاح	heritage	التراث
celebrate	يحتفل	circumstances	الظروف
solidarity	التضامن	blood donors	متبرعين بالدم
constitute / form	يشكل	obstacles = hinders	عوائق
constitution	الدستور	suffer from	يعانى من
hinder	يعوق	fly-over bridges	كباري علوية
drought	الجفاف - قحط	the underground metro	مترو الإنفاق
offer necessary facilities	تقدم التسهيلات	summit conference	مؤتمر القمة
natural resources	مصادر طبيعية	prime minister	رئيس الوزراء
as a result of	نتيجة لـ	minister	وزير
electric sets	أجهزة كهربائية	from cradle to grave	من المهد إلى اللحد
provide... for	يوفر بـ	industrial	صناعي
economic crises	أزمة اقتصادية	agricultural	زراعي
economic integration	تكامل اقتصادي	reclaiming	استصلاح
saving	الادخار	construction	تعمير - تشييد
negotiations	مفاوضات	narcotics = drugs	مواد مخدرة
deal in = trade in	يتاجر في	craftsman	حرفي
do without	يستغنى عن	economic reform	الإصلاح الاقتصادي
encourage	يشجع	take drugs	يتعاطى مخدرات
doubtless	بلا شك	any progress \ nation	أي تقدم \ أمة
education	التعليم	the basis of	أساس
the core of	جوهر - لب - أساس	be+armed with \ laden with	يتسلح \ يتحلى بـ
Policy	السياسة	aim at (v+ing)( مصدر )	يهدف إلى
economic	الاقتصادية	educational system	النظام التعليمي
owe ( to)	ندين - مدين لـ	prove	يثبت - يبرهن
development	التنمية	scholars and thinkers	العلماء والمفكرين
we can't deny that	لا يمكن أن ننكر أن	modification	تعديل
tell the truth	يقول الحقيقة	concerning	بشأن - بخصوص
exert great efforts	تبذل جهود عظيمة	presidency	الرئاسة
eliminate = overcome	يقضي على - يمحو	achieving	تحقيق
illiteracy	الأمية	production	الإنتاج
make up for	يعوض	different activities	أنشطة مختلفة
a good citizen	مواطن صالح	vary - various	يتنوع - عديد

## نماذج محلولة من امتحانات الأعوام السابقة

1. Learning foreign languages needs never stop. One should not learn a foreign language merely to achieve an immediate professional or academic aim and then give it up. He should carry on learning, as it is a valuable experience that enriches his life.
  - إن احتياجك لتعلم اللغة الأجنبية لا يجب أن يتوقف أبداً . و لا يجب علي الفرد أن يتعلم اللغة الأجنبية فقط ليحقق هدفا مهنيا أو أكاديميا مؤقتا ثم يتوقف عن تعلمها بل يجب أن يستمر في التعلم لأنها خبرة قيمة تثري حياته.
2. Celebrating the new millennium at the foot of the Pyramids of Giza was marvellous. That was the best place from which we could pass to the new century. The celebration aimed at combining the ancient and the modern and reviewing the history of human civilization.
  - كان الاحتفال بالألفية الجديدة عند سفح أهرامات الجيزة رائعا وكان هذا أفضل مكان يمكننا المرور منه إلى القرن الجديد . وكان الاحتفال يهدف إلى دمج القديم و الحديث و مراجعة تاريخ الحضارة الإنسانية.
3. To be interested in something is a golden rule in life. If a person is always chained to his office, he will grow physically and mentally weak. If such a person has a hobby, his daily work will no longer be tiring.
  - القاعدة الذهبية في الحياة هي أن يكون لك شيء تهتم به و لو كان الشخص دائما مقيدا بمكتبه، فانه سيصبح ضعيف البدن و الذهن ، و لو أن هذا الشخص لديه هواية ، فان عمله اليومي لن يكون مرهقا.
4. The government is trying to solve the transport problem by constructing new roads and flyovers. The number of vehicles is increasing everyday. Roads are becoming too crowded for drivers to use.
  - تحاول الحكومة حل مشكلة المواصلات بإنشاء طرق و كباري علوية جديدة، فعدد المركبات يزداد كل يوم و الطرق تصبح شديدة الازدحام بحيث يتعذر علي السائقين استخدامها.
5. It is said that television has destroyed the art of conversation and made people unhappy by forcing them to want things they do not need. On the other hand, it helps people to update their knowledge of the world affairs, as they can see current events in different parts of the world the moment they occur.
  - يقال أن التلفاز قد أفسد فن الحوار و جعل الناس غير سعداء بإجبارهم أن يطلبوا أشياء لا يحتاجونها ، و من ناحية أخرى فانه يساعد في تطوير معرفة الناس بشئون العالم ، لأنه يمكنهم من متابعة الأحداث الجارية في أجزاء مختلفة من العالم لحظة حدوثها.
6. Cutting off trees in cities is an ill deed. Trees give us shade in summer and the green colour makes us feel at ease. Trees also purify the air and they give off oxygen by day. That's why we should do our best to spread the green colour all over our country.
  - إن قطع الأشجار في المدن فعل سيئ، فالأشجار تعطينا الظل في الصيف، و اللون الأخضر يجعلنا نشعر بالارتياح و الأشجار أيضا تنقي الهواء بإخراج الأكسجين نهرا ، و لهذا السبب يجب أن نبذل قصاري جهدنا لنشر اللون الأخضر في كل مكان بوطننا.
7. The establishment of public libraries and school libraries contributed to improving the learning process as a whole and helped many citizens to read freely. Public libraries play an important role in spreading culture and awareness among people of all ages.
  - إن إقامة المكتبات العامة و المكتبات المدرسية قد ساهم في تحسين العملية التعليمية ككل، و ساعد كثير من المواطنين علي القراءة الحرة و تلعب المكتبات العامة دورا هاما في نشر الثقافة و الوعي بين الناس من كل الأعمار.
8. Communications satellites can transmit radio and TV programmes at great distances. Egypt's satellite, Nile Sat 101, serves the whole of the Arab world. Egypt is planning to launch more satellites in the future.
  - يمكن أن تبث أقمار الاتصالات الصناعية برامج التلفزيون و الراديو علي مسافات بعيدة و يقوم القمر الصناعي المصري ، النائل سات بخدمة العالم العربي كله و تخطط مصر لطلاق المزيد من الأقمار الصناعية في المستقبل.

9. Some of the most important aims of education are to build up an Egyptian citizen who is able to face the future and to create a productive society. Education also aims at preparing a generation of scientists for the service of humanity.

- إن بناء مواطن مصري يكون قادرا علي مواجهة المستقبل و خلق مجتمع منتج هي بعض أهم أهداف التعليم و يهدف التعليم أيضا إلى إعداد جيل من العلماء لخدمة البشرية.

10. Practising activities at school is of great importance. Teachers should encourage their students to participate effectively in school activities. Such activities help students to learn some values like co-operation, respect for others, self-confidence and perseverance.

- إن ممارسة الأنشطة في المدرسة له أهمية عظيمة و يجب علي المعلمين أن يشجعوا طلابهم علي المشاركة بصورة فعالة في الأنشطة المدرسية و مثل هذه الأنشطة تساعد الطلاب علي تعلم بعض القيم مثل التعاون و احترام الآخرين و الثقة بالنفس و المثابرة.

11. Over-population in Egypt has led to many other problems like illiteracy, heavy traffic and unemployment. The government should exert more efforts to bring down the population growth rates. It should also pay more attention to the development of human resources.

- إن التزايد السكاني في مصر قد أدي إلى الكثير من المشكلات الأخرى مثل الأمية و ازدهام المرور و البطالة و يجب علي الحكومة أن تبذل المزيد من الجهود لقليل معدلات النمو السكاني كما يجب عليها أيضا أن توجه اهتماما أكبر لتطوير الموارد البشرية.

12. Energy is necessary for development. It is essential for all productive activities required to achieve higher standards of living. Man's great progress in industry and agriculture is due to energy.

- إن الطاقة ضرورية للتطور و هي أساسية لكل الأنشطة الإنتاجية المطلوبة لتحقيق مستويات معيشة أعلى إن تقدم الإنسان الهائل في الصناعة و الزراعة يرجع إلى الطاقة.

13. The Egyptian woman has acquired all her rights. She is also represented in all international organizations concerned with women's affairs. Moreover, services are rendered to provide family guidance and child's welfare.

- لقد حصلت المرأة المصرية علي كل حقوقها و هي أيضا ممثلة في كل المنظمات الدولية المعنية بشئون المرأة و علاوة علي ذلك تقدم لها الخدمات التي توفر الإرشاد الأسري و رعاية الطفل.

14. Egypt does its best to attract Arab and foreign capital for investment in the field of industry. We encourage the establishment of new industries as well as expanding the existing ones. Due attention has been given to introduce software and communication industries.

- تبذل مصر ما بوسعها لجذب رؤوس الأموال العربية و الأجنبية للاستثمار في مجال الصناعة . إننا نشجع إقامة صناعات جديدة و كذلك التوسع في الصناعات القائمة كما حظيت صناعات البرمجة و الاتصالات بالعناية اللازمة

15. Great achievements have been made in Egypt to move population from narrow inhabited areas to new wider expanses. New cities near Cairo have been constructed and large areas of the desert have been reclaimed.

- لقد تحققت إنجازات عظيمة في مصر لنقل السكان من الناطق السكنية الضيقة إلي مناطق جديدة أكثر اتساعا و قد بنين مدن جديدة بالقرب من القاهرة و تم استصلاح مناطق كبيرة من الصحراء.

16. Every year Egypt celebrates the International Child's Day in November. Prizes are given to children who successfully take part in the "Reading for All" competition. Creative children in the different branches of knowledge are honoured.

- تحتفل مصر كل عام باليوم العالمي للطفل في شهر نوفمبر و تمنح الجوائز للأطفال الذين شاركوا بنجاح في مسابقة القراءة للجميع و يتم أيضا تكريم الأطفال المبدعين في فروع المعرفة المختلفة.

17. Egypt has always been known as the "Birthplace of Civilization" because of its long and rich history. We are now keen on restoring our glories to keep pace with progress in developed countries.

- عرفت مصر دائما بأنها مهد الحضارة نظرا لتاريخها الطويل و الثري و نحن الآن مهتمون باستعادة أمجادنا لمواكبة التقدم في الدول المتطورة.



18. Health is a splendid treasure that completes our happiness. It's worth saying that we can't really enjoy our life if we are unhealthy, however wealthy we may be. Healthy people are always proud of what they can achieve in the fields of sports and hard work. For unhealthy people, life is no more than pain and suffering.

- إن الصحة كنز رائع يكمل سعادتنا و الدير بالذكر أننا لا نستطيع في الحقيقة الاستمتاع بحياتنا إذا لم نكن أصحاء مهما كنا أثرياء . إن الناس الأصحاء يفخرون دائما بما يستطيعون تحقيقه في مجالات الرياضة و العمل الشاق و بالنسبة للناس غير الأصحاء فان الحياة ليست أكثر من مجرد ألم و معاناة.

19. The world's ever increasing population means more houses, more roads, more factories, and this means less land for animals and plants. Over-population also means more waste and pollution, and this makes life increasingly difficult for many creatures.

- إن التزايد المستمر في سكان العالم يعني المزيد من المساكن و المزيد من الطرق و المزيد من المصانع و هذا يعني أرض أقل للحيوانات و النباتات و التزايد السكاني يعني أيضا المزيد من الفضلات و التلوث و هذا يجعل الحياة صعبة بشكل متزايد لكثير من المخلوقات.

20. Distance learning makes use of educational experts in the various branches of knowledge all over the world. We can make use of distance learning in all fields including the different branches of science.

- إن التعلم عن بعد يستفيد من خبراء التعليم في فروع العلم المختلفة في كل أنحاء العالم ونحن نستطيع أن نستفيد من التعلم عن بعد في كل المجالات بما في ذلك فروع العلوم المختلفة.

21. The promotion of international co-operation and peace through education is one of UNESCO's basic aims. It is the only means for the accomplishment of prosperity, real and lasting peace among the peoples of the world.

- إن تعزيز التعاون الدولي السلام من خلال التعليم هو أحد الأهداف الأساسية لمنظمة اليونسكو و هذه هي الوسيلة الوحيدة لتحقيق الرخاء و السلام الحقيقي و الدائم بين كل شعوب العالم.

22. The government sets up industrial projects to increase our local production. It encourages the private sector to invest capital. It also demolishes the barriers that hinder economic progress.

- تقوم الحكومة بإنشاء المشروعات الصناعية لزيادة إنتاجنا المحلي و هي تشجع القطاع الخاص لاستثمار رؤوس الأموال و هي تقوم أيضا بإزالة الحواجز التي تعوق التقدم الاقتصادي.

23. Undoubtedly, tourism is a chief source of national income and hard currency. The government exerts great efforts to develop the tourist industry. The aim is to attract a greater number of tourists to visit Egypt, the land of civilization.

- مما لا شك فيه أن السياحة مصدر رئيسي للدخل القومي و العملة الصعبة و تبذل الحكومة جهودا عظيمة لتطوير صناعة السياحة و الهدف من ذلك هو جذب عدد أكبر من السياح لزيارة مصر أرض الحضارة.

24. Arab countries must co-operate economically to achieve prosperity for the Arab world. They should solve their problems in the Arab League. Besides, they have to encourage the Arab scientists to make progress in the field of science.

- ينبغي علي الدول العربية أن تتعاون اقتصاديا لتحقيق الرخاء للعالم العربي و يجب عليها حل مشكلاتها في الجامعة العربية و بالإضافة لذلك يجب أن تشجع العلماء العرب لتحقيق التقدم في مجال العلم.

25. Some scientists have found that people are more likely to catch a cold when they are unhappy or under stress. This is because the immune system is less effective when we are worried. Doctors have also found out that people with mild colds get better if the doctor is kind.

- وجد بعض العلماء أن الناس من المحتمل أكثر أن يصابوا بالبرد عندما يكونون غير سعداء أو تحت ضغط و هذا لأن جهاز المناعة يكون أقل فعالية عندما نصاب بالقلق و قد وجد الأطباء أن الناس المصابون بنزلات برد خفيفة يتحسنون إذا كان الطبيب عطوفا.

26. Many people like to collect things like stamps, for example. Some stamp collections are very valuable. Usually the fewer the number of people who have a stamp in their collections, the more valuable that stamp is.

- كثير من الناس يحب جمع الأشياء مثل طوابع البريد مثلا، و بعض مجموعات الطوابع هذه ذات قيمة كبيرة، و كلما قل عدد الأشخاص الذين يملكون طابعا معنا في مجموعاتهم، كلما زادت قيمة ذلك الطابع.
- 27. Peace gives us a golden chance to carry out useful projects. It saves the money spent on wars and destructive weapons. In peace, this money can be used for building new factories, improving health care and solving the problems of housing and transport.
- يمنحنا السلام فرصة ذهبية لتنفيذ المشروعات المفيدة، و هو يوفر المال الذي ينفق علي الحروب و الأسلحة المدمرة، و في وقت السلام يمكن استخدام هذا المال في بناء المصانع الجديدة و تحسين الرعاية الصحية و حل مشكلات الإسكان و المواصلات.
- 28. It is important not to waste the Earth's resources; we should turn off the lights, televisions and computers when we have finished using them. Thus we can help in saving energy.
- من المهم ألا نبدد الموارد الطبيعية في باطن الأرض و علينا إطفاء الأنوار و أجهزة التلفاز و الحاسب الآلي عند الانتهاء من استخدامها و بذلك يمكننا المساعدة في توفير الطاقة.
- 29. The High Dam is one of the greatest projects made by man. It serves both industry and agriculture in Egypt. It has paved the way to constructing new factories and establishing new industries. An artificial lake has been formed to provide fish and store water for times of need.
- إن السد العالي من أعظم المشروعات التي قام بها الإنسان. فقد خدم كلاً من الصناعة و الزراعة في مصر و مهد الطريق لبناء المصانع و تشييد صناعات جديدة و إنشاء بحيرة صناعية لتوفر الأسماك و لتخزين المياه لأوقات الحاجة .
- 30. Man has to reach a balanced relation with the environment and its components. Hence, education plays an important role in deepening environmental awareness in students and transferring this into good modes of behaviour towards environmental preservation willingly.
- على الإنسان أن يصل إلى علاقة متوازنة مع البيئة و مكوناتها و من ثم يلعب التعليم دوراً هاماً في تعميق الوعي البيئي للطلاب و ترجمة /نقل هذا الوعي إلى أساليب سلوكية جيدة تجاه الحفاظ على البيئة عن طيب خاطر / طوعية
- 31. Communication has become easier and the chance for individuals to obtain mass information at a great speed has become available. This has resulted in a feverish race among nations to obtain advanced technology.
- لقد أصبح الاتصال أكثر سهولة و يسر و فرص الأفراد في الحصول على المعلومات إجمالية و بسرعة فائقة أصبحت متاحة و نتج عن ذلك سباق محموم بين الأمم للحصول على تقنية متقدمة.
- 32. There is no longer any doubt that smoking is a fatal habit In fact the number of those who have died because of smoking-related diseases surpasses the number of victims of epidemics, wars and accidents in our modern age.
- لم يعد هناك أي شك أن التدخين عادة مهلكة ففي الحقيقة عدد هؤلاء الذين ماتوا بسبب أمراض مرتبطة بالتدخين يفوق عدد ضحايا الأوبئة و الحروب و الحوادث في العصر الحديث.

### Translate into English: [answered]

1. تبذل الحكومة قصارى جهدها لتمكن المواطن المصري من مجابهة ارتفاع نفقات المعيشة .
- The government does its best to enable the Egyptian citizen to face the rising cost of living
2. تبذل الحكومة جهدا عظيما لاستصلاح جزءا من الصحراء وتحويله الى حقول خضراء لتوفير الأمن الغذائي لكل مواطن.
- The government makes a great effort to reclaim part of the desert and change it into green fields to provide food security for every citizen.
3. تشجع الحكومة الصناعات المحلية حتى تستطيع أن تستغنى عن كثير من الواردات التي تحتاج الى عملية صعبة .
- The government encourages local industries so that we can do without a lot of imports which need hard currency.
4. للتلفزيون تأثير عظيم على الأطفال ولذا يجب أن يزيد ثقافتهم بطريقة بسيطة وشيقة.
- Television has a great influence on children so it must increase their culture in a simple and interesting way.
5. تسعى الحكومة الى توفير احتياجات الشعب بكل السبل وهذا يستلزم زيادة الانتاج وتنظيم النسل.
- The government is trying to provide the people with what they need in every way. This requires the increase of production and birth control.

6. ان الضوضاء التى تسببها المدينة الحديثة تؤثر تائيرا سينا على سمعنا .
- The noise which is caused by modern civilization has a bad effect on our hearing.
7. علينا ألا نزعج المرضى أو الطلبة الذين يستذكرون دروسهم وذلك بمراعاة الهدوء.
- We mustn't disturb patients or students who study their lessons by keeping quiet .
8. لقد أثبت الأطباء أن من لا يدخنون مطلقا يعيشون حياة أطول وأكثر صحة لذا تناقص عددا كثيرا من يدخن.
- Doctors have proved that those who don't smoke at all live a longer and healthier life. So, the number of those who smoke has greatly decreased.
9. يتسلم الكتاب والعلماء جوائز قيمة كل عام فى حفل كبير يحضره رئيس الجمهورية ليسلم جوائزهم.
- Writers and scientists receive valuable prize every year in a great ceremony. The president attends it to give them their prizes.
10. لقد أصبح الاهتمام بالتعليم والعلوم من أهم الأهداف التى تسعى لتحقيقها جمهورية مصر العربية.
- Interest in education and science has become one of the most important aims that the Arab Republic of Egypt tries to achieve.
11. تنفذ الحكومة العديد من المشروعات لحل مشكلة النقل العام بالقاهرة.
- The government carries out a lot of projects to solve the problem of public transport in Cairo.
12. تساعد وسائل النقل الحديثة التجارة على النمو والازدهار .
- Modern means of transport help trade to grow and flourish.
13. فى الوقت الحاضر لا تستطيع أى دولة أن تقف بمعزل عن الدول الأخرى ولا تستطيع دولة أن تنتج كل ما تحتاج إليه من طعام.
- At present, no country can stand in isolation from other countries. No country can produce all the food that it needs.
14. علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس .إن كل فرد يختلف عن الآخرين فى عدة نواحى.
- We have to learn how to live with other people. Every individual differs from others in many aspects./ (respects)
15. لقد أدى العلم خدمات قيمة للإنسانية .لقد تمكن الإنسان من الوصول إلى القمر بعد غزوه للفضاء.
- Science has rendered valuable services to humanity. Man has been able to reach the moon after his the space conquest.
16. تستخدم الطاقة النووية فى مجالات الطب والصناعة والزراعة وتوليد الكهرباء.
- The nuclear power is used in the fields of medicine industry, agriculture and generating electricity.
17. لقد أصبح التلفزيون وسيلة لنشر المعرفة ويستمتع بمشاهدته الكبار والصغار على حد السواء.
- Television has become a means of spreading knowledge. Both the old and the young enjoy watching it.
18. الانفجار السكاني مشكلة تواجه الدول النامية وهى تعوق تقدمها حاضرها تكون مواردها الطبيعية محدودة.
- Over-population is a problem that faces all developing countries. It hampers their progress especially when their natural resources are limited.
19. ان زيادة الانتاج وتحسين نوعيته هما الطريق لتحقيق دخل يساعد على رفع مستوى المعيشة.
- Increasing production and improving is quality are the only way to achieve an income which helps to raise the standard of living.
20. تعتبر قناة السويس أعظم ممر مائى بين الشرق والغرب، ولقد أصبحت مصدرا هاما للدخل القومى.
- The Suez Canal is the greatest water way between East and west. It has become an important source of national income.
21. تأتى الأمانة فى قمة الصفات البارزة لأخلاق الانسان الفاضل.
- Honesty comes at the top of the salient characteristics of a virtuous man.
22. تمكننا المخترعات الحديثة من أن نحيا حياة أفضل وأكثر راحة.
- Modern inventions enable use to lead a better and more comfortable life.
23. يأتى السياح الى مصر للاستمتاع بمشاهدة المعابد الفرعونية القديمة والمتاحف والأماكن التاريخية.

- Tourists come to Egypt to enjoy seeing the old Pharaonic temples, the museums and the historic places.
- 24. إن العدل الاجتماعي هو الشرط الأساسي للسلام والاستقرار لأي مجتمع.
- Social justice is the basic condition for peace and stability.
- 25. إن الإقلاع عن العادات السيئة يتطلب عزيمة قوية.
- Giving up bad habits needs/ requires a strong will.
- 26. تقوى الألعاب الرياضية أجسامنا وتنعش عقولنا وتعلمنا التعاون والصبر وحب الوطن.
- Sports and games strengthen our bodies and refresh our minds and teach us co-operation patience and love of our country.
- 27. - إن الطاقة الذرية مصدر خير للإنسان إذا أحسن استغلالها.
- Atomic energy is a source of good to man if it is well exploited.
- 28. من الطبيعي أن تكون لمصر علاقات قوية مع كل الدول لأنها دولة رائدة في كل المجالات.
- It is normal for Egypt to have strong relations with all countries because it is a pioneering country in all fields.
- 29. - مهارات الكمبيوتر ضرورية للغاية لمواجهة المنافسة الشديدة في سوق العمل.
- Computer skills are very necessary to face the severe competition in the labour market.
- 30. يقاس تقدم الأمم بمدى اهتمامها بقضايا البيئة علي اختلاف أنواعها.
- The progress of nations is measured by how much they are interested in the different kinds of environmental issues.
- 31. إن حفلات الزفاف مناسبات هامة في كل بلد ، و هناك تقاليد للزفاف تختلف باختلاف البلد.
- Wedding ceremonies are important occasions in every country. Wedding traditions differ from one country to another.
- 32. إن الخيال العلمي عادة ما يكون محاولة جادة للكتابة عن شكل الحياة في المستقبل أو في عالم آخر.
- Science fiction is usually a serious attempt to write about how life will be like in the future or in a another world.
- 33. أحب الذهاب إلى الأوبرا للاستمتاع بالموسيقى الراقية.
- I like going to the opera to enjoy fine music.
- 34. إن الجهود التي تبذل من أجل تحسين الصحة لا يمكن أن تتم بنجاح إلا بتعاون الأفراد مع الحكومة.
- The efforts exerted to improve health cannot be successfully achieved unless individuals cooperate with the government.
- 35. إن هوايتي المفضلة هي قراءة القصص الخيالية و الاستماع إلى الموسيقى.
- My favourite hobby is reading imaginary stories and listening to music.
- 36. يقدم العلماء الجديد كل يوم لخدمة البشرية.
- Every day scientists offer something new for the welfare of mankind.
- 37. سيتغير العام القادم شكل و محتوى الكتاب المدرسي.
- Next year, the shape and content of the school book will be changed.
- 38. إن الاهتمام بتطوير التعليم من أهم الأهداف التي تسعى مصر لتحقيقها.
- The interest in developing education is one of the most important goals that Egypt seeks to achieve.
- 39. الحضارة تزدهر أفضل في أوقات السلام.
- Civilization flourishes well during peace times.
- 40. توفر الحكومة فرصا للشباب للعمل وكسب الرزق وذلك بتقديم القروض لإقامة مشروعات صغيرة خاصة بهم.
- The government provides young people with opportunities for work and earning their living by offering them loans to set up their own projects.
- 41. يجب أن يشجع الآباء و المعلمون الأطفال الصغار على الذهاب إلى المكتبات لاستعارة الكتب التي يحبونها.
- Parents and teachers should encourage children to go to the libraries to borrow the books they like.
- 42. إن الطريقة التي يربى بها الوالدان أطفالهم تؤثر على حياتهم في المستقبل.

- The way / method by which parents bring up their children affect their life in the future.  
43. تشجع الحكومة الصناعات المحلية حتى نستغني عن كثير من الواردات التي تحتاج إلى الكثير من العملة الصعبة.
- The government encourages the local industries to dispense with a lot of imports that need a lot of hard currency.  
44. إن القراءة هي مفتاح المعرفة والعمل الجاد هو الطريق إلى السعادة.
- Reading is the key to knowledge and hard work is the way to happiness.  
45. يعتبر المال رمزا للغنى ولكنه ليس بالضرورة رمزا للسعادة.
- Money is considered a symbol of wealth/ richness but not necessarily happiness.  
46. يعتبر إنشاء الكثير من مكتبات الأطفال خطوة هامة نحو إثراء ثقافة الطفل
- Establishing child's libraries is considered an important step towards enriching the child's culture.  
47. تعلم كيف تستفيد بوقتك و إلا لن تنجح في حياتك.
- Learn how to make use of your time or / otherwise you will not succeed in life.  
48. إن الطاقة الذرية سلاح ذو حدين فهي نعمة في وقت السلم ونقمة في وقت الحرب.
- Atomic energy is a double-edged weapon as it is a blessing in time of peace and a disaster in time of war.  
49. يقوم العلماء بأبحاث عديدة للاستفادة القصوى من مصادر الطاقة المتجددة كالماء و الرياح و الطاقة النووية.
- Scientists do a lot of research to make full use of renewable sources of energy such as water, wind and nuclear energy.  
50. لا يستطيع الإنسان بأي حال من الأحوال أن يستغنى عن الماء و الهواء و لولاهما لهلكت جميع الكائنات الحية.
- Man, by no means can't do without / dispense with water and air. Without them all living things would perish.

## ***Workbook Exercises***

### **Reviews:**

#### **(A)**

Currently, the cost of a holiday in space is very high. But the more people want something, the cheaper it will become. So if you are interested, start saving now!

.....

.....

#### **(B)**

If wood is heated, chemicals are produced which can be used to make medicines and some kinds of plastic. Wood products are also used in some types of ice cream.

.....

.....

#### **(C)**

If you live in southern Europe or Africa, you know that the temperatures are higher and there is less rain than if you live in northern Europe or Canada. It is unusual for the weather forecast to surprise us.

.....

.....

#### **(D)**

We now know that plants and trees make their own food. Their leaves are like factories producing everything they need, so that plants can change the energy from the sun into chemical energy.

.....

.....

.....

**(E)**

In the eighth century, Arab travellers who traded with China learned how to make paper. At first, paper was very expensive because it was made from cotton, but later it was produced from wood and so became much cheaper.

.....  
.....  
.....

**(F)**

To remain employable, individuals must be good at the jobs they are doing and predict what skills they may need in the future. In today's world, lifelong learning helps people to get these skills.

.....  
.....

**Practice Tests:**

**(1)**

Everyone who has travelled in space has described the magical feeling of looking down on the Earth as it spins. It is impossible to go for a walk. However, you can do exercises.

.....  
.....  
.....

**(2)**

Yahia Haqqi was born in 1905 in the Sayyida Zeinab district of Cairo. He graduated in law and worked for a short time as a lawyer. In 1929, he began his career as a diplomat.

.....  
.....  
.....

**(3)**

Egypt has many amazing works of ancient and modern engineering. At the south of Aswan, for example, Abu Simbel is the site of two temples. These were carved into a cliff in about 1250 BCE.

.....  
.....  
.....

**(4)**

By the time Alexandre Dumas was 20, his mother had spent all her money. He then went to live in Paris. There he found work as a secretary to an old friend of his father.

.....  
.....  
.....

**(5)**

Every year, millions of trees are cut down to make new paper. Fortunately, the trees that give us the best wood for paper grow very quickly. Old paper can also be recycled.

.....  
.....  
.....

**(6)**

Thirty years ago, most university students believed that when they graduated, their education had finished. They expected to get a job and work for one employer. They would work in one place until they retired.

.....  
.....  
.....

***B) Translate into English:***

***Reviews:***

**(A)**

1. اثنا مليون جنيه مبلغ كبير من المال ، أليس كذلك؟

.....  
.....  
.....

2. في بعض الأماكن يستخدم قصب السكر في صناعة الوقود للسيارات ومركبات أخرى.

**(B)**

1. عندما كان يوشك على الانتهاء من الرواية ، كان يفكر في الرواية القادمة.

.....  
.....  
.....

2. تم نشر كتبها في أكثر من مائة دولة حول العالم.

**(C)**

1. كانت الرياح بالقطع شديدة خلال الليل ، أليس كذلك؟

.....  
.....  
.....

2. أحمد وعلا وعدونا أن يكونوا هنا غداً في الصباح الباكر.

**(D)**

1. كانت مرهقة لأنها ظلت واقفة طوال اليوم في عملها.

.....  
.....  
.....

2. يؤسفنا أن نخبركم أن الاحتفالية لن تقام هذا العام.

**(E)**

1. لا يزال عملها مقدراً اليوم ، والذي أخذ جزءاً كبيراً من حياتها الشخصية.

.....  
.....  
.....

2. عندما استيقظت إيمان في الصباح الباكر ، رأت الجو ممطراً.

**(F)**

1. سألتها عن الجامعة التي كانت تدرس بها.

.....  
.....  
.....

2. إذا كنت أريد أن ابدأ هذه السنة ، فعلى أن أتقدم بأوراقتي قبل نهاية الأسبوع القادم.

### **Practice Tests:**

(1)

1. هل تطفئ الأنوار عندما تكون خارج الغرفة؟

.....

2. بعدما أنهت دراستها المدرسية التحقت بجامعة القاهرة.

.....

(2)

1. لو كنت قلقاً عليك أن تسأل والديك النصيحة.

.....

2. ما نوعية الأنشطة التي تحب أن تمارسها خلال نهاية الأسبوع؟

.....

(3)

1. عفواً ، هل يمكن ترشدني إلى أحسن طريق للوصول إلى المحطة؟

.....

2. الشمس قوية جداً وعليك ألا تنظر إليها مباشرة.

.....

(4)

1. ليتنى استذكرت باجتهاد عندما كان الوقت متاحاً.

.....

2. ما نوعية الموسيقى التي تحب سماعها؟

.....

(5)

1. إذا لم تجتهد أكثر في دروسك سوف تفشل في الاختبار.

.....

2. اعتقد أن الناس سوف تستمر في قراءة الكتب من اجل المتعة.

.....

(6)

1. هل فكرت في الالتحاق بجامعة في الخارج بعد التخرج.

.....

2. كثرة المال لا توفر بالضرورة حلولاً للمشاكل.

.....

***With My Best Wishes  
MR. Ayman M. Ebrahim  
ELmahalla Secondary School For Boys***



## ARABREPUBLIC OF EGYPT

Ministry of Education General Secondary Education Certificate Examination, 2011

[Second Stage - First Session]

First Foreign Language: ENGLISH (2) Time: 3 Hours

**A- Language Functions****1] Respond to each of the following situations:**

- 1- Your younger brother is very busy. You would like to help him.
- 2- A classmate asks you why you enjoy playing sports. Name one reason.
- 3- Someone asks you the time of the next train to Aswan.
- 4- Your sister asks you your opinion about the importance of e-books.

**2) Who are the speakers and the language function in the mini-dialogues:**

- 1- A: Well, your application has been accepted.  
B: Wow! That's great! When can I start?  
A: Next Sunday. You'll be working at the Garden City branch.

Place :  
Speaker A:  
Speaker B:  
Function:

- 2- A: I'd like to deposit this sum, please.  
B: Sure. Just fill in this form.

Place :  
Speaker A:  
Speaker B:  
Function:

**B- Vocabulary & Structure:****3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1- Samir has two sisters;..... of them are older than him.  
a) neither                      b) none                      c) both                      d) each
- 2- The astronauts are going to..... a space station in space.  
a) build                      b) invent                      c) analyze                      d) arrest
- 3- Mona promised that she..... home tomorrow.  
a) be                      b) would have been                      c) will have been                      d) will be
- 4- Arab countries shouldn't be in..... as they face the same challenges.  
a) condition                      b) confidence                      c) harmony                      d) conflict
- 5- If you can't dictate your conditions, you ..... negotiate.  
a) will                      b) should                      c) need                      d) ought
- 6- A/An..... is a ceremony in which somebody officially becomes a king.  
a) occasion                      b) debate                      c) organization                      d) coronation
- 7- I want to buy a new villa, so I..... save a lot of money.  
a) am going to                      b) will                      c) going to                      d) will be
- 8- The medical condition of not being able to remember anything is called .....  
a) megalomania                      b) insomnia                      c) amnesia                      d) phobia
- 9- The play is suggested to ..... because the leading actor is ill.  
a) being cancelled                      b) cancel                      c) have cancelled                      d) be cancelled
- 10- All the Egyptians should co-operate to save the country from any foreign .....  
a) evaluation                      b) invasion                      c) excavation                      d) exploration
- 11- For centuries, the wind has been used..... ships.  
a) to sailing                      b) sailed                      c) sailing                      d) to sail
- 12- There is a special..... in our kitchen for cutting vegetables.

- a) budget                      b) bracelet                      c) gadget                      d) saw

13- Samia asked Hala..... she was doing anything the next day.

- a) unless                      b) whether                      c) without                      d) except

14- Most creatures have some..... features.

- a) common                      b) comment                      c) complain                      d) insulated

15- Had it rained so heavily, we..... floods.

- a) wouldn't have had                      b) would have                      c) would have had                      d) may have

16- Mr. Ali is very..... He wants to have a company of his own.

- a) ambitious                      b) grateful                      c) graceful                      d) sociable

**4) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:**

- 1- Peace knows to be constructive.
- 2- Splitting of cells produces nuclear power.
- 3- That's the boy which dog bit me last Friday.
- 4- Manufacturers reinvent paper, rather than throw it away.
- 5- There was a lake in the oil tank, so the car broke down.
- 6- Eighty kilometers is along way to travel using two liters of petrol.

### **C- Reading**

**5) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

What is love? The writer of "The Chemistry of Love" believes that falling in love is influenced by our brain chemistry. This connection between the way we feel and the way our bodies function is his main concern. Falling in love gives you extra energy. Your heart beats faster and you feel optimistic. Love meets our emotional needs, this makes everything look possible and rosy and we work better.

The book says we are programmed at birth to produce endorphins when we are in close relationships. It is nature's way of keeping us together. When the relationship ends - or we are afraid it might end - production of endorphins stops.

What is remarkable in a relationship is the newness. You need newness, sharing and growth. The brain has to experience a change which creates excitement. That is why the great romances of literature are never between people who stay together.

**A) Give short answers to the following questions:**

- 1- Mention briefly the main idea of the passage.
- 2- Why does the world look rosy when you are in love?
- 3- What does the underlined word refer to?

**Choose the correct answer from a. b. c or d:**

4- Endorphins could be the name of a.....

- a) love story                      b) chemical substance  
c) part of the brain                      d) sort of literature

5- According to the passage, everlasting love.....

- a) must lead to marriage                      b) makes you pessimistic  
c) uses up a lot of your energy                      d) is determined by inner chemistry

**6) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Some editors of newspapers and magazines often go to extremes to provide their readers with unimportant facts and statistics. Once, a journalist was instructed to write an article on a new president's palace. When the article arrived, the editor read the first sentence and refused to publish it. The article began: "Hundreds of steps lead to the high wall which surrounds the

president's palace." The editor at once sent a telegram telling the journalist to find out the exact number of steps and the height of the wall.

The journalist set out to obtain these important facts. But he took a long time to send them and the editor got impatient. In another telegram he said if he didn't reply soon, he would be fired. A week later, the editor was informed that the poor man had been arrested and sent to prison.

**A) Give short answers to the following questions:**

- 1- Who arrested the journalist?
- 2- Why was the editor impatient?
- 3- Where was the journalist asked to go?

**Choose the correct answer from a. b. c or d:**

4- The underlined word refers to the.....

- a) sentence                      b) telegram                      c) article                      d) palace

5- To be 'fired' here means to be.....

- a) shot with a gun                      b) dismissed                      c) set on fire                      d) promoted

### **The Novel**

**A) Answer the following questions:**

- 1- Leila and Amalia were helpless in the mountains. (Explain this statement)
- 2- Who was the mask kept by and where?

**Read the following quotation and then answer the questions:**

"United Mining operations in Peru ended in 1999."

1. What was 'United Mining'?
2. What did this statement show?

**C. Complete the following to make meaningful sentences:**

1. Ramon was chosen to get into the tomb first as.....
2. Amalia was a good archaeologist and so experienced that.....

### **D- Writing**

**Write a paragraph of about 100 words about:**

How to share in the progress of our country

### **Translation**

**A. Translate into Arabic:**

To enjoy the quality of being right and fair, you should have justice. It is one of the basic values in all social systems. It is also recommended by all religions and called for by all prophets.

**B. Translate into English:**

- 1- لقد وضعت مصر اول لبننة فى صرح الديموقراطية الحقيقية يوم 19 مارس.
- 2- يرى الكثيرون ان العولمة تخدم الدول الغنية على حساب الدول الفقيرة .

**With My Best Wishes  
MR. Ayman M. Ebrahim  
ELmahalla Secondary School For Boys**

## ARAB REPUBLIC OF EGYPT

## Ministry of Education

Completion of Egyptian G.S.C.E in the republic of Sudan, 2011

[Second Stage – First Session]

First Foreign Language: English (2)

Time: 3 Hours

**Language Functions*****1- Respond to each of the following situations:***

- 1- You ask your friend doctor's advice how to keep fit
- 2- A pen friend asks you about the places of interest in Egypt
- 3- Your brother got a good job at a big company
- 4- You suggest going to the theatre at the weekend,

***2-Mention the place, the speakers and the language function:***

- 1- A: I'd like to book a return ticket to Aswan.  
B: Here you are. Platform No. 5. Have a good trip.  
A: Thank you.

Place: ..... Speaker A :..... Speaker B :..... Function.....

- 2- A: I have a severe headache what should I do now?  
B: Take this medicine, regularly. And you have to take some rest  
A: Thank you.

Place: ..... Speaker A :..... Speaker B :..... Function.....

**B: Vocabulary and structure*****3) Choose the correct answer from a ,b ,c or d***

1-The moon has less.....than the earth so you could jump much higher there

- a) power    b) energy    c) gravity    d) strength

2-.....he understand the lesson if he read the summary.

- a) Will    b) Did    c) Can    d) would

3- The prisoner of Zenda..... in the nineteenth -century .

- a) took part    b) took run    c) took place    d) took form

4- Ali ..... travelling by sea

- a) used to    b) using to    b) is used to    d) uses to

5- Modern ..... are the tall tower which are built where there is a lot of wind.

- a) waste    b) wind turbine    c) fossil    d) hydroelectric

6- How ..... information have you got from the story?

- a) many    b) much    c) lots    d) different

7- This mice story ..... By Taha Hussein

- a) is written    b) writes    c) wrote    d) was written

8- Yehia Haqqi graduated in law and worked for time as a .....

- a) lawyer    b) diplomat    c) sailor    d) journalist

9- It's a month ..... Hand last visited her uncle.

- a) for    b) since    c) of    d) to

10- The .... are the parts of trees that grow under the ground and find water.

- a) branch    b) bark    c) rings    d) roots

11- He will catch the train ..... coming in time.

- a) if    b) in case of    c) unless    d) in spite of

12- The cover of the book is made of .....

- a) rubber      b) glass      c) wood      d) cardboard

13- The teacher asked Ahmed .....all the way on foot

- a) if he came      b) if did he come  
c) would he come      d) if does he come

14- ..... makes light shine on something.

- a) Grass      b) Cliff      c) Illuminate      d) Carve

15- They left two ago, so they.....arrived by now. It's not far.

- a) must      b) must have      c) can't have      d) have

16- He did nothing wrong. He's .....

- a) suspect      b) guilty      c) innocent      d) sensible

**4- Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly**

- 1- All scientists are interested of space.
- 2- My brother had a good educated. He to one of the best university .
- 3- Despite she is clever , Mona fell in the final exam.
- 4- I went to the university to buy some medicine.
- 5- Before you go to London, you should practice to speak English.
- 6- My father is a good tennis playing.

### **C- Reading Comprehension**

**5- Read the following passage , then answer the question**

Amy Tan is a Chinese American writer. She writes about the lives of second generation Chinese American. She was born in California in 1952, several years after her mother and father immigrated to San Francisco from China. Her father John, was an electrical engineer. When Amy was eight, her essay, "What the Library means to me" won first prize Her father died in 1967 from brain trouble as her brother. Tan has written several novels including "The Joy Luck Club", published in 1989, This novel has been translated into 15 languages," The Kitchen God's Wife" and "Saving Fish from Frowning". Theses deal with the difficulties mothers and daughters have in truly understanding one another. She also wrote a collection of non-fiction essays entitled the Opposite of Fate. Tan lived New York with her husband, a lawyer whom she met and married in 1973. Tan received her bachelor's and master's degrees in English and linguistics.

**A) Answer the following questions**

- 1- Where were Amy Tan's parents born?
- 2- What did she do when she was eight?
- 3- How did her father meet his end?

**B) Choose the best answer from a, b, c or d**

4- Amy Tan was married when she was .....

- a) 25      b) 52      c) 22      d) 74

5- The underlined word (This) refers to .....

- a) The joy Luck Club.      b) The kitchen God's wife  
c) The hundred secret senss      d) Saving fish from drawing

**6- Read the following passage, then answer the questions**

The basic function of education is to teach children knowledge, values, and pattern of behaviour they will need in the adult World and will move from generation to another. Education is largely informal that occurs within the family. Family members teach children the values of their society as well as certain basic skills. Parents may teach their children the skills of cooking,

food gathering, hunting and fishing. By this way Children learn the way of society by participating in adult activities.

Formal education which involves instruction by specific trained teachers who follow officially recognized policies, is called schooling, Schools fulfill this function through a set of courses that include such subjects as languages and literature, history geography, mathematics, science and foreign Languages. Also schools develop the critical thinking of students' skills that are necessary to meet their needs in the future.

**A) Answer the following questions**

- 1- What is the aim of education?
- 2- How will schools achieve their goals?
- 3- How do children learn from societies?

**B) Choose the best answer from a. b. c or d:**

4- The underlined word "their" refers to....

- a) members      b) parents      c) students      d) teachers

5- This passage mentioned..... types of education.

- a) two      b) three      c) one      d) four

**The Reader (The Mask of Gold)**

**A) Answer the following questions**

- 1- How did Leila communicate with her sister while she was in Peru?
- 2- What did Amalia do to get Leila into trouble?

**B) Read the following questions and then answer the quotation:**

**"So we meet again, Miss El assaby"**

- 1- Who said this and where?
- 2- What happened to Leila after this conversation took place?

**C) Complete the Following sentences :**

- 1- The Incas put gold and silver objects .....
- 2- Mining and archaeology have .....

**D Writing**

**Write a paragraph of about 100 words about :**

**"The importance of Reading"**

**Translation**

**E- Translation into Arabic**

Co-operation among nations of the world will result in spreading peace and security. They should help each other to improve the living conditions of their people.

**B) Translate into English**

يجب أن ننشئ الأطفال على حب الوطن واحترام الوالدين

**ARAB REPUBLIC OF EGYPT**  
**Ministry of Education**  
**General Secondary Education Certificate Examination, 2011**  
**[Second Stage - Second Session]**  
**First Foreign Language: ENGLISH (2) Time: 3 Hours**

**Language Functions**

***1) Respond to each of the following situations:***

- 1- A tourist wants to visit some places of interest in Egypt.
- 2- A friend asks about your plans for the next holiday.
- 3- Your father wants to know your opinion about the TV serials.
- 4- The teacher asks Samia which language skill she would like to improve.

***2-Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:***

- 1- A: What do you think this word means?  
B: Generous?  
A: Well done.

Place: ..... Speaker A :..... Speaker B :..... Function.....

- 2- A: How much is this cream?  
B: Only LE. 12.  
A: Here you are. How often should I use it?  
B: Once before bedtime and once more in the morning.

Place: ..... Speaker A :..... Speaker B :..... Function.....

**B- Vocabulary & Structure**

***3) Choose the correct answer from a. b. c or d:***

- 1-.In 1954, the government decided..... The High Dam .  
a) built      b) building      c) to build      d) had built
- 2-. July 2010 was the 41st..... of man's first landing on the moon.  
a) anniversary      b) anonymous      c) anomalous      d) advisory
- 3-.Yehia Haqqi.....of as the father of the Egyptian modern short story and novel.  
a) still is thinking      b) still is thought      c) is still thought      d) is still thinking
- 4-..... is the entertainment that helps people to forget about their worries.  
a) Euphemism      b) Escapism      c) Publication      d) Presentation
- 5- Monira has just told Amira that they .....to their friend's wedding tonight.  
a) would go      b) have gone      c) were going      d) are going
- 6 - A / An.....is a set of books dealing with every branch of human knowledge.  
a) encyclopedia      b) brochure      c) literature      d)anti-media
- 7-.....his old age, my uncle is very energetic.  
a) Although      b) Despite      c) Because of      d)In spite of
- 8- Lightning is a natural, but dangerous.....  
a) sight      b) view      c) phenomenon      d)eclipse
- 9- Name the actor.....plays Salah El Deen.  
a) which      b) whose      c) whom      d)who
- 10- I think that the new skills in this course will make you more.....  
a) employment      b) employer      c) unemployed      d) employable

**11 - I wish I .....my time last weekend.**

a) didn't waste b) hadn't wasted c) wasted d) had wasted

**12 - A good director is the one who ..... his employees' efforts.**

a) neglects b) degrades c) communicates d) appreciates

**13 - I traveled by train, but I.....by car.**

a) might have travelled b) could travel

c) could have travelled d) can travel

**14 - Many teenagers think that they have the .....to understand life properly.**

a) maturity b) mortality c) majority d) morality

**15 - It began to rain and there were no taxis. At last I.....arrive home.**

a) was able to b) couldn't c) wasn't able to d) managed

**16 - Folk songs were made up to describe important ..... events.**

a) historian b) historic c) history d) historical

**4-Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:**

1- Most girls I know like music.

2- A space job can take several years.

3- Ten minutes are not long for you to wait for the train.

4- Teachers and supervisors belong to the teaching confession.

5- He sends to prison for his crime.

6- The winners feel ashamed when they receive medals

### **C- Reading**

**5) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

A scientific principle is often understood long before it is made into an invention. This was the case with the power of steam and steam engines, but not with laser. The word laser stands for Light Amplification by Stimulated Emission of Radiation. Simply laser is a device that produces a very strong light called coherent light or laser beam. The light derived from electric bulbs or the sun - incoherent light - moves in all directions. Laser beam moves in only one direction and is much stronger. Laser uses are countless. One of its earliest uses was measuring distances and speeds and it was amazingly accurate. For example, the exact speed of light was determined to be 186, 282. 397 miles per second. Now laser is used in the military field, surgery, factories, supermarkets, telephone work, video disc players and so many others. The laser can truly become the light of the 21st century.

**A. Give short answers to the following questions:**

1- Prove that laser is a very accurate device.

2- What does the underlined word refer to?

3- Laser light is different from the familiar light. Explain.

**B. Choose the correct answer from a. b. c or d:**

**4- Laser is used in video disc players to .....**

a) establish exhibitions b) show pictures on TV

c) record sound waves d) publish magazines

**5- .....is more concentrated than electric light.**

a) Laser beam b) Incoherent light

c) Sun beam d) Speed of light

**6) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**



What does it mean to be lucky? It commonly means someone who gets something valuable without really trying, someone who is in the right place at the right time. The person who buys a winning lottery ticket or who discovers a lost painting by a famous painter - these are lucky people. Yet, luck does not guarantee happiness. Accepting ourselves exactly as we are at this present moment provides the courage to move forward. Believing that all our choices in the past were the best we could have made frees us from regret. It also reinforces our belief that we are good as we can be now. The best preparation for the future is self-acceptance in the present. Self-acceptance and trust in people are the foundations of confidence and courage. Added to action, they lead to more opportunities for unexpected events - which people call luck - that can enrich our lives.

**A) Give short answers to the following questions:**

- 1- Why is self-acceptance important?
- 2- How can we best prepare for the future?
- 3- What does the underlined word refer to?

**B. Choose the correct answer from a. b. c or d:**

**4- Trust in people.....**

- |                               |                                    |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| a) leads to unexpected events | b) reminds us of the past          |
| c) means a good choice        | d) leads to confidence and courage |

**5- A person who.....is a lucky person.**

- |                            |                                   |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| a) passes a final exam     | b) breaks a record                |
| c) runs into an old friend | d) buys a car of the latest model |

**The Novel**

**7).A. Answer the following questions:**

- 1- Why did Leila regret going to Peru?
- 2- How did the workmen close the tomb entrance?

**B. Read the following quotation and then answer the questions:**

"Yes, a person's life did not have much value for the Incas."

- 1 - Who said this? To whom?
- 2- What horrible thing did the Incas use to do? Why?

**C) Complete the following to make meaningful sentences:**

- 1- Dr. Hafez made Amalia in charge .....
- 2- Martin Lander had an American passport, but .....

**D- Writing**

**8- Write a paragraph of about 100 words about:**

A day you will never forget

**Translation**

**9).A. Translate into Arabic:**

I am busy looking after thirty distributors in my area. Therefore, I continually contact them. I also attend conferences and do presentations to explain to clients about the industry.

**B. Translate into English:**

- 1- علينا بترشيد استخدام المياه العذبة وإلا سنواجه الظمأ مستقبلا
- 2- يجب أن يعتبر كل مصري نفسه مرشدا سياحيا لكي تزدهر السياحة

### Answers ( choice )

1- on	2- on	3- watching	4- everyday
5- are they	6- achieve	7- works	8- reading
9- looking	10- by	11- with	12- anniversary
13- memory	14- repair	15- reform	16- effect
17- discover	18- on	19- experimenting	20- to hear
21- expected	22- on	23- in	24- hero
25- champion	26- unlike	27- couple	28- private
29- what	30- the other	31- other	32- another
33- the elderly	34- father's	35- an	36- work
37- job	38- experience	39- routine	40- win
41- board	42- rather	43- by	44- by
45- let	46- in	47- bad	48- shy
49- finding	50- exists	51- founded	52- contain
53- included	54- consists	55- company	56- of
57- else	58- wondering	59- quite	60- connect
61- contact	62- debate	63- atmosphere	64- remind
65- sending	66- remember	67- compared	68- excuse
69- ever	70- losses	71- illuminated	72- diameter
73- know	74- recognize	75- cost	76- use
77- didn't	78- rather	79- cleaned	80- biography
81- in	82- at	83- respectable	84- respectful
85- fend	86- foul	87- fault	88- relations
89- relationship	90- change	91- sight	92- sights
93- wear	94- put	95- dressed	96- cause
97- calm	98- running	99- blind	100- do
101- strengthen	102- provide	103- enrolled	104- have to
105- must	106- throw	107- celebrity	108- forced
109- had done	110- conscientious	111- had been doing	112- in which
113- regularly	114- must have forgotten	115- routine	116- is produced
117- enthusiastic	118- screen	119- have been completed	120- download
121- so	122- excitement	123- arriving	124- regards
125- effective	126- in which	127- to deliver	128- cause
129- hadn't eaten	130- can't have	131- an identity	132- is
133- whose	134- traditional	135- celebrate	136- planned
137- to spend	138- recognize	139- object	140- had been working
141- amount	142- achieve	143- knew	144- profession
145- starts	146- occur	147- if	148- unless
149- would have been	150- done	151- knocking	152- would
153- positioned	154- must have left	155- phenomenon	156- attachment
157- nature	158- will be	159- amnesia	160- innocent
161- is expected	162- suspect	163- style	164- has been
165- used to	166- renewable	167- occasions	168- any
169- examined	170- alike	171- is	172- much
173- is going to plant	174- distance	175- attend	176- side effects
177- provide	178- employers	179- persuade	180- fluent
181- sociable	182- will have been delivered	183- although	184- where
185- because of	186- whom	187- cardboard	188- conventional
189- had told	190- position	191- theory	192- recognize
193- specialize	194- wouldn't feel	195- might have taken	196- invented
197- had started	198- shy	199- much	200- launch

## Answers ( Find the mistakes)

Mistake	Correction	Mistake	Correction	Mistake	Correction
1-wrong something	something wrong	2-raised	risen	3-arose	aroused
4-like	as	5-tasty	tasteful	6-same	similar
7-similar	same	8-regretful	regrettable	9-serious	series
10-expect	except	11-agree	accept	12-various	vary
13-down	up	14-learnt	taught	15-given	to give
16-place	replace	17-to	for	18-being	to be
19-interested	interestingly	20-feet	fit	21-overview	interview
22-salary	wage	23-so	such	24-inject	object
25-resorted	deserted	26-winning	to win	27-weather	whether
28-bit	was bitten	29-college	pharmacy	30-despite	although
31-can	could	32-already book	have already been booked	33-rewrite	recycle
34-birthday	funeral	35-who's	whose	36-bored	boring
37-playwrites	playwrights	38-lost	gained	39-said	asked
40-diabolic	diabetic	41-a	any	42-were	had been
43-waste	save	44manuscript	monument	45-epression	profession
46-took	taken	47-boil	boils	48-works	has been working
49-wrote	was written	50-work	am going to work	51-double	couple
52-liquid	solid	53-use	be used	54-much	many
55-late	leak	56-using	to use	57-excepted	expected
58-to not	not to	59—found	been found	60-telling	told
61convenient	conveniently	62-which	where	63-which	whose
64-is	was/were	65-stop	would stop	66-of	on
67-can't	must	68-had she	she had	69-taken	given
70-takes	has	71-is working	has been working	72-are having	will have
73-trying	try	74-can	could	75-didn't say	hadn't said
76-going	to go	77-to listen	listening	78-informing	to inform
79-meeting	to meet	80-doing	to do	81-spoken	speaking
82-is falling	falls	83-was	has been	84-is used to	used to
85-are	is	86-a school	school	87-has	have
88-are	is	89-is	was	90-although	despite
91-because	but	92-decision	procession	93-rationally	traditionally
94-that	whose	95conscience	conscientiously	96-district	distance
97-search	research	98monument	instrument	99-many	much
100-regally	regularly				

***With My Best Wishes***

***MR. Ayman M. Ebrahim***

***ELmahalla Secondary School For Boys***